



# **Ecclesiastes**

**translationNotes**

v6

# Copyrights & Licensing

## License:

This work is made available under a [Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike 4.0 International License](#), which means

You are free:

- Share — copy and redistribute the material in any medium or format
- Adapt — remix, transform, and build upon the material for any purpose, even commercially.

Under the following conditions:

- Attribution — You must attribute the work as follows: “Original work available at <http://unfoldingword.org>.” Attribution statements in derivative works should not in any way suggest that we endorse you or your use of this work.
- ShareAlike — If you remix, transform, or build upon the material, you must distribute your contributions under the same license as the original.

Use of trademarks: **unfoldingWord** is a trademark of Distant Shores Media and may not be included on any derivative works created from this content. Unaltered content from <http://unfoldingword.org> must include the **unfoldingWord** logo when distributed to others. But if you alter the content in any way, you must remove the **unfoldingWord** logo before distributing your work.

This work is still being revised, if you have comments or questions please email them to [help@door43.org](mailto:help@door43.org)

**Version:** 6

**Published:** 2017-02-22

## **Table of Contents**

<b>Copyrights &amp; Licensing</b> . . . . .	<b>1</b>
<b>translationNotes</b> . . . . .	<b>10</b>
Introduction to Ecclesiastes . . . . .	10
Ecclesiastes 1 General Notes . . . . .	18
Ecclesiastes 1:1-3 . . . . .	19
Ecclesiastes 1:4-6 . . . . .	21
Ecclesiastes 1:7-8 . . . . .	23
Ecclesiastes 1:9-11 . . . . .	25
Ecclesiastes 1:12-15 . . . . .	27
Ecclesiastes 1:16-18 . . . . .	29
Ecclesiastes 2 General Notes . . . . .	30
Ecclesiastes 2:1-2 . . . . .	31
Ecclesiastes 2:3 . . . . .	32
Ecclesiastes 2:4-6 . . . . .	33
Ecclesiastes 2:7-8 . . . . .	34
Ecclesiastes 2:9-10 . . . . .	36
Ecclesiastes 2:11-12 . . . . .	38
Ecclesiastes 2:13-14 . . . . .	40
Ecclesiastes 2:15-16 . . . . .	42
Ecclesiastes 2:17-18 . . . . .	44
Ecclesiastes 2:19-20 . . . . .	45
Ecclesiastes 2:21-23 . . . . .	46
Ecclesiastes 2:24-25 . . . . .	48
Ecclesiastes 2:26 . . . . .	49
Ecclesiastes 3 General Notes . . . . .	50
Ecclesiastes 3:1-3 . . . . .	51
Ecclesiastes 3:4-5 . . . . .	53
Ecclesiastes 3:6-7 . . . . .	54
Ecclesiastes 3:8-10 . . . . .	55
Ecclesiastes 3:11 . . . . .	56
Ecclesiastes 3:12-13 . . . . .	57
Ecclesiastes 3:14-15 . . . . .	58
Ecclesiastes 3:16-17 . . . . .	59
Ecclesiastes 3:18 . . . . .	60
Ecclesiastes 3:19-20 . . . . .	61
Ecclesiastes 3:21-22 . . . . .	62
Ecclesiastes 4 General Notes . . . . .	63
Ecclesiastes 4:1 . . . . .	64
Ecclesiastes 4:2-3 . . . . .	65
Ecclesiastes 4:4 . . . . .	66
Ecclesiastes 4:5-6 . . . . .	67

*Table of Contents*

---

Ecclesiastes 4:7-8 . . . . .	68
Ecclesiastes 4:9-11 . . . . .	70
Ecclesiastes 4:12 . . . . .	72
Ecclesiastes 4:13-14 . . . . .	73
Ecclesiastes 4:15-16 . . . . .	74
Ecclesiastes 5 General Notes . . . . .	75
Ecclesiastes 5:1 . . . . .	76
Ecclesiastes 5:2-3 . . . . .	77
Ecclesiastes 5:4-5 . . . . .	79
Ecclesiastes 5:6-7 . . . . .	80
Ecclesiastes 5:8-9 . . . . .	81
Ecclesiastes 5:10-11 . . . . .	83
Ecclesiastes 5:12 . . . . .	85
Ecclesiastes 5:13-14 . . . . .	86
Ecclesiastes 5:15-17 . . . . .	87
Ecclesiastes 5:18 . . . . .	89
Ecclesiastes 5:19-20 . . . . .	90
Ecclesiastes 6 General Notes . . . . .	91
Ecclesiastes 6:1-2 . . . . .	92
Ecclesiastes 6:3-4 . . . . .	93
Ecclesiastes 6:5-6 . . . . .	95
Ecclesiastes 6:7-8 . . . . .	96
Ecclesiastes 6:9-10 . . . . .	97
Ecclesiastes 6:11-12 . . . . .	99
Ecclesiastes 7 General Notes . . . . .	101
Ecclesiastes 7:1-2 . . . . .	102
Ecclesiastes 7:3-4 . . . . .	104
Ecclesiastes 7:5-6 . . . . .	106
Ecclesiastes 7:7 . . . . .	107
Ecclesiastes 7:8-9 . . . . .	108
Ecclesiastes 7:10 . . . . .	110
Ecclesiastes 7:11-12 . . . . .	111
Ecclesiastes 7:13 . . . . .	113
Ecclesiastes 7:14 . . . . .	114
Ecclesiastes 7:15-16 . . . . .	115
Ecclesiastes 7:17-18 . . . . .	117
Ecclesiastes 7:19-20 . . . . .	119
Ecclesiastes 7:21-22 . . . . .	120
Ecclesiastes 7:23-25 . . . . .	121
Ecclesiastes 7:26 . . . . .	123
Ecclesiastes 7:27-28 . . . . .	125
Ecclesiastes 7:29 . . . . .	126
Ecclesiastes 8 General Notes . . . . .	127

Ecclesiastes 8:1 . . . . .	128
Ecclesiastes 8:2-4 . . . . .	129
Ecclesiastes 8:5-7 . . . . .	130
Ecclesiastes 8:8-9 . . . . .	132
Ecclesiastes 8:10-11 . . . . .	134
Ecclesiastes 8:12-13 . . . . .	136
Ecclesiastes 8:14-15 . . . . .	137
Ecclesiastes 8:16-17 . . . . .	138
Ecclesiastes 9 General Notes . . . . .	140
Ecclesiastes 9:1 . . . . .	141
Ecclesiastes 9:2 . . . . .	142
Ecclesiastes 9:3 . . . . .	144
Ecclesiastes 9:4-5 . . . . .	145
Ecclesiastes 9:6-8 . . . . .	146
Ecclesiastes 9:9-10 . . . . .	148
Ecclesiastes 9:11-12 . . . . .	149
Ecclesiastes 9:13-15 . . . . .	151
Ecclesiastes 9:16 . . . . .	152
Ecclesiastes 9:17-18 . . . . .	153
Ecclesiastes 10 General Notes . . . . .	154
Ecclesiastes 10:1-3 . . . . .	155
Ecclesiastes 10:4 . . . . .	157
Ecclesiastes 10:5-7 . . . . .	158
Ecclesiastes 10:8-9 . . . . .	160
Ecclesiastes 10:10-11 . . . . .	162
Ecclesiastes 10:12 . . . . .	163
Ecclesiastes 10:13-14 . . . . .	164
Ecclesiastes 10:15 . . . . .	166
Ecclesiastes 10:16-17 . . . . .	167
Ecclesiastes 10:18-19 . . . . .	169
Ecclesiastes 10:20 . . . . .	171
Ecclesiastes 11 General Notes . . . . .	172
Ecclesiastes 11:1-3 . . . . .	173
Ecclesiastes 11:4-5 . . . . .	175
Ecclesiastes 11:6-8 . . . . .	177
Ecclesiastes 11:9-10 . . . . .	179
Ecclesiastes 12 General Notes . . . . .	181
Ecclesiastes 12:1-2 . . . . .	182
Ecclesiastes 12:3 . . . . .	183
Ecclesiastes 12:4 . . . . .	184
Ecclesiastes 12:5 . . . . .	185
Ecclesiastes 12:6-7 . . . . .	187
Ecclesiastes 12:8-9 . . . . .	189

*Table of Contents*

---

Ecclesiastes 12:10-11 . . . . .	190
Ecclesiastes 12:12 . . . . .	191
Ecclesiastes 12:13-14 . . . . .	192
<b>translationQuestions . . . . .</b>	<b>194</b>
Ecclesiastes 1 . . . . .	194
Ecclesiastes 2 . . . . .	195
Ecclesiastes 3 . . . . .	197
Ecclesiastes 4 . . . . .	198
Ecclesiastes 5 . . . . .	199
Ecclesiastes 6 . . . . .	201
Ecclesiastes 7 . . . . .	202
Ecclesiastes 8 . . . . .	204
Ecclesiastes 9 . . . . .	206
Ecclesiastes 10 . . . . .	208
Ecclesiastes 11 . . . . .	209
Ecclesiastes 12 . . . . .	210
<b>translationWords . . . . .</b>	<b>211</b>
afflict, affliction . . . . .	211
age . . . . .	212
marvel, wonder, amazed, astonished . . . . .	213
amen, truly . . . . .	214
angry, anger . . . . .	215
anoint, anointed . . . . .	216
appoint, appointed . . . . .	217
assign, assigned . . . . .	218
believe, believe in, belief . . . . .	219
bless, blessed, blessing . . . . .	220
bread . . . . .	222
breathe, breath . . . . .	223
bribe . . . . .	225
brother . . . . .	226
burden . . . . .	227
bury, buried, burial . . . . .	228
call, calling, called, call out . . . . .	229
clean, cleanse . . . . .	231
comfort, comforter . . . . .	232
command, to command, commandment . . . . .	233
concubine . . . . .	234
consume . . . . .	235
corrupt, corruption . . . . .	236
counsel, counselor, advice, advisor . . . . .	237
create, creation, Creator . . . . .	238
crime, criminal . . . . .	239

curse, cursed . . . . .	240
darkness . . . . .	241
David . . . . .	242
death, die, dead . . . . .	243
descendant, descended from . . . . .	245
destiny, destine, destined . . . . .	246
dream . . . . .	247
drunk, drunkard . . . . .	248
earth, earthly . . . . .	249
envy, covet . . . . .	250
everlasting, eternal, eternity . . . . .	251
evil, wicked, wickedness . . . . .	252
face . . . . .	254
false god, foreign god, god, goddess . . . . .	256
favor, favorable, favoritism . . . . .	257
fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh . . . . .	258
feast . . . . .	259
flesh . . . . .	260
flock, herd . . . . .	261
fool, foolish, folly . . . . .	262
forever . . . . .	263
fountain, spring . . . . .	264
generation . . . . .	265
gift . . . . .	266
God . . . . .	267
gold . . . . .	269
good, goodness . . . . .	270
grace, gracious . . . . .	272
hades, sheol . . . . .	273
hand, right hand, to hand over . . . . .	274
harvest . . . . .	276
heal, cure . . . . .	277
heart . . . . .	278
heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly . . . . .	279
holy, holiness . . . . .	280
honor, to honor . . . . .	281
hope . . . . .	282
horse . . . . .	283
house . . . . .	284
house of God, Yahweh's house . . . . .	285
inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir . . . . .	286
Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel . . . . .	288
Jerusalem . . . . .	289

*Table of Contents*

---

joy, joyful . . . . .	291
judge, judgment . . . . .	292
judge . . . . .	294
just, justice, justly . . . . .	295
kingdom . . . . .	296
king . . . . .	298
know, knowledge, make known . . . . .	299
labor, laborer . . . . .	300
lament, lamentation . . . . .	301
life, live, living, alive . . . . .	302
light . . . . .	304
lion . . . . .	305
livestock . . . . .	306
lord, master, sir . . . . .	307
love . . . . .	308
messenger . . . . .	310
mighty, might . . . . .	311
mind . . . . .	312
mourn, mourning . . . . .	313
name . . . . .	314
neighbor . . . . .	315
noble, nobleman . . . . .	316
oath, swear, swear by . . . . .	317
obey, obedient, obedience . . . . .	318
oil . . . . .	319
oppress, oppression, oppressor . . . . .	320
palace . . . . .	321
patient, patience . . . . .	322
peace, peaceful . . . . .	323
perish, perishing, perishable . . . . .	324
pit . . . . .	325
power, powers . . . . .	326
praise . . . . .	327
priest, priesthood . . . . .	328
prison, prisoner, imprison . . . . .	330
profit, profitable . . . . .	331
prosper, prosperity, prosperous . . . . .	332
proud, pride, prideful . . . . .	333
proverb . . . . .	334
province, provincial . . . . .	335
raise, rise, risen, arise, arose . . . . .	336
rebuke . . . . .	338
receive . . . . .	339



rejoice . . . . .	340
rest . . . . .	341
reward . . . . .	342
righteous, righteousness . . . . .	343
ruler, rulers, rule . . . . .	344
sacrifice, offering . . . . .	345
save, safe . . . . .	347
seed . . . . .	349
servant, slave, slavery . . . . .	350
shadow . . . . .	352
shepherd, to shepherd . . . . .	353
siege, besiege . . . . .	355
silver . . . . .	356
sin, sinful, sinner, sinning . . . . .	357
snare, trap . . . . .	359
son, son of . . . . .	360
soul . . . . .	362
spirit, spiritual . . . . .	363
strength, strengthen . . . . .	365
submit, in submission . . . . .	367
teacher, Teacher . . . . .	368
test . . . . .	369
thorn, thistle . . . . .	370
time . . . . .	371
tremble . . . . .	372
trouble, troubles, troubled . . . . .	373
true, truth, come true . . . . .	374
unclean . . . . .	376
understand, understanding . . . . .	377
upright, uprightness . . . . .	378
vineyard . . . . .	379
voice . . . . .	380
vow . . . . .	381
walk . . . . .	382
watch, watchman . . . . .	383
water, waters . . . . .	384
well, cistern . . . . .	385
wine, wineskin, new wine . . . . .	386
wise, wisdom . . . . .	387
womb . . . . .	388
word . . . . .	389
works, deeds, work, acts . . . . .	390

<b>translationAcademy</b> . . . . .	<b>391</b>
Abstract Nouns . . . . .	391
Active or Passive . . . . .	394
Apostrophe . . . . .	397
Doublet . . . . .	399
Ellipsis . . . . .	401
Euphemism . . . . .	403
Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information . . . . .	405
Hyperbole . . . . .	407
Hypothetical Situations . . . . .	410
Idiom . . . . .	413
Irony . . . . .	415
Merism . . . . .	418
Metaphor . . . . .	420
Metonymy . . . . .	425
Parallelism . . . . .	427
Personification . . . . .	429
Direct and Indirect Quotations . . . . .	431
Reflexive Pronouns . . . . .	433
Rhetorical Question . . . . .	436
Simile . . . . .	439
Synecdoche . . . . .	442
How to Translate Names . . . . .	444
Numbers . . . . .	448
Translate Unknowns . . . . .	451

## translationNotes

### Introduction to Ecclesiastes

#### Part 1: General Introduction

#### Outline of the Book of Ecclesiastes

1. Questions about the emptiness of life and the limits of human wisdom (1:1–6:12)
2. Teaching about making wise choices in how one lives (7:1–12:7)
3. The conclusion and epilogue (12:8–14)

#### What is the Book of Ecclesiastes about?

Ecclesiastes is a group of short teachings that try to answer the question “What is life?” This book speaks about the futility of seeking a purpose in the things of this world. From the book’s viewpoint, any work we perform or any knowledge and skill we gain are useless. Ecclesiastes is a series of thoughts about a variety of subjects, all of them about the purpose and worth of various actions and events.

#### How should the title of this book be translated?

The traditional title “Ecclesiastes” is another name for “assembly” and carries no meaning as a title. Translators might decide on a better title such as “Thoughts of a Teacher” or “Thoughts of a Wise Man.”

#### Who wrote the Book of Ecclesiastes?

The author appears to be Solomon, “the Teacher, the descendant of David and king in Jerusalem.” This matches evidence in the book pointing to Solomon which are consistent with the status and reputation of Solomon: his wisdom (see 1:16 and twenty-six other references to wisdom); his vast wealth (see 2:8), and the pain that comes from wealth (see: 5:13-14; 4:8; and 9:11); the large number of servants (see: 2:7 and 10:7); the limitless opportunities for worldly pleasures (see: 2:1, 2, 10; 3:13; 4:8; 5:4; and 12:1); and the wide range of his many construction projects (see: 2:4-6). The book appears to be written near the end of Solomon’s reign as he reflects on how he wasted much of his life.

#### Why are there so many contradictions in the Book of Ecclesiastes?

Some people have viewed the author as a faithful man, while others see him as a tragic figure. The apparent contradictions in the book may be a reflection of Solomon’s wavering faith, but it is also possible that the teachings in the book differ from each other in order to suit various circumstances in the reader’s life.

## Part 2: Important Religious and Cultural Concepts

### What is the book's teaching about God's retribution?

In the Ancient Near East, people were concerned with the reason they were being punished or blessed]]. They often attributed these acts of justice or retribution to their gods. Ecclesiastes explains that Yahweh will bless the righteous and punish the evil, but this might not happen in this life. (See: **ble**ss, **ble**ssed, **ble**ssing, **ju**st, **ju**stice, **ju**stly, **fa**lse god, **fo**reign god, **go**d, **go**ddess, **ri**ghteous, **ri**ghteousness and **evi**l, **wi**cked, **wi**ckedness)

### What value did the Israelites place on Ecclesiastes?

The Israelites have often questioned the value of this book. This is due in large part to its unusual wording and theology. At times, it appears to disagree with the rest of Scripture. While many have questioned its authority, it has ultimately been affirmed to be Scripture because it gives valuable lessons concerning the uselessness living apart from Yahweh and of pursuing any goal other than his glory.

## Part 3: Important Translation Issues

### What is the meaning of "under the sun?"

"Under the sun" is another way of saying "on the earth." When the author says that there is "nothing new under the sun," this means that there is nothing that has not happened before on earth. While the referenced event may not have specifically occurred before, there has been something similar that has happened.

### How do I translate harsh or shocking passage?

There are parts of the book that can be shocking or surprising to read in Scripture. For example, "If a man fathers a hundred children and lives many years, so that the days of his years are many, but if his heart is not satisfied with good and he is not buried with honor, then I say that a baby that is born dead is better off than he is" (6:3). The translator should allow these difficulties to remain and not try to "soften" them.

How is life described in Ecclesiastes? After observing the lack of justice in the world, the author of Ecclesiastes concludes that life without God has no value or purpose and because of this it is without meaning. There is some subtle difference in the meaning for each of these words. It can be concluded that apart from God, a person's circumstances or character and even all of the things of this world have little or no significance apart from God who gives meaning to everything. At the end of their life, a person commonly sees their life as short. The author uses the metaphor of vapor or breath to describe how life ends while it seems to still be beginning.

**List of translationAcademy Topics in Ecclesiastes**

- \* **Abstract Nouns** is found in: 02:01, 02:03, 05:08, 05:10, 05:15, 07:05, 07:27, 10:18, 12:05
- \* **Active or Passive** is found in: 01:09, 01:12, 02:04, 02:15, 02:17, 03:16, 04:12, 05:08, 05:13, 06:03, 06:07, 06:09, 06:11, 07:21, 07:26, 08:08, 08:10, 08:12, 08:14, 08:16, 09:03, 09:04, 09:06, 09:13, 09:16, 10:05, 10:08, 10:10, 12:04, 12:06, 12:10, 12:13
- \* **Apostrophe** is found in: 10:16
- \* **Doublet** is found in: 01:12, 01:16, 02:04, 02:11, 02:21, 03:16, 05:08, 05:18, 05:19, 06:01, 07:26, 11:06
- \* **Euphemism** is found in: 05:15, 06:03, 06:11, 11:06, 12:05
- \* **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information** is found in: 02:04, 04:09, 07:23
- \* **Hyperbole** is found in: 04:15
- \* **Hypothetical Situations** is found in: 06:05
- \* **Idiom** is found in: 01:12, 02:03, 02:13, 02:21, 04:05, 05:08, 05:15, 05:18, 05:19, 06:03, 07:03, 07:11, 07:14, 07:17, 07:23, 08:01, 08:12, 08:14, 09:11, 10:01, 10:13, 12:01, 12:06
- \* **Merism** is found in: 03:01, 03:04, 09:02
- \* **Metaphor** is found in: 01:12, 02:13, 04:05, 05:10, 05:15, 07:08, 07:26, 08:01, 11:01, 12:03, 12:04, 12:05, 12:06, 12:08, 12:10
- \* **Metonymy** is found in: 02:24, 04:01, 05:06, 05:08, 05:19, 06:07, 06:09, 06:11, 07:01, 07:03, 07:07, 07:08, 07:15, 07:17, 07:21, 07:23, 07:26, 08:02, 08:05, 09:01, 09:03, 09:06, 10:01, 10:04, 10:12, 10:13, 10:20, 11:06, 12:06
- \* **Parallelism** is found in: 01:01, 02:21, 03:01, 03:16, 04:15, 05:02, 06:03, 07:15, 08:12, 09:06, 10:20, 11:09
- \* **Personification** is found in: 08:08
- \* **Direct and Indirect Quotations** is found in: 02:01
- \* **Reflexive Pronouns** is found in: 07:21
- \* **Rhetorical Question** is found in: 01:01, 01:09, 02:01, 02:11, 02:15, 02:19, 02:21, 02:24, 03:19, 03:21, 04:07, 04:09, 05:06, 05:10, 05:15, 06:07, 06:11, 07:10, 07:13, 07:15, 07:17, 07:23, 08:02, 08:05, 10:13
- \* **Simile** is found in: 02:13, 06:11, 07:05, 08:08, 08:12, 09:11, 10:01, 12:10
- \* **Synecdoche** is found in: 01:07, 02:01, 02:09, 02:11, 02:15, 02:19, 03:16, 05:06, 06:03, 08:10, 08:16, 09:09, 10:18, 11:04, 11:06, 11:09, 12:12
- \* **Numbers** is found in: 06:03, 06:05, 07:27, 08:12, 11:01

**List of translationWords in Ecclesiastes**

- \* **afflict, affliction** is found in: 06:01

- \* age is found in: 01:09
- \* marvel, wonder, amazed, astonished is found in: 05:08
- \* amen, truly is found in: 11:06
- \* angry, anger is found in: 05:06, 05:15, 07:08, 11:09
- \* anoint, anointed is found in: 09:06
- \* assign, assigned is found in: 03:21
- \* believe, believe in, belief is found in: 08:16
- \* bless, blessed, blessing is found in: 10:16
- \* bread is found in: 09:06, 11:01
- \* breathe, breath is found in: 08:08
- \* bribe is found in: 07:07
- \* brother is found in: 04:07
- \* burden is found in: 01:12
- \* bury, buried, burial is found in: 06:03, 08:10
- \* call, calling, called, call out is found in: 12:01, 12:06
- \* clean, cleanse is found in: 09:02
- \* comfort, comforter is found in: 04:01
- \* command, to command, commandment is found in: 08:02, 12:13
- \* concubine is found in: 02:07
- \* corrupt, corruption is found in: 07:07
- \* counsel, counselor, advice, advisor is found in: 08:02
- \* create, creation, Creator is found in: 02:04, 07:29, 11:04, 12:01, 12:06
- \* crime, criminal is found in: 08:10
- \* curse, cursed is found in: 07:21, 10:20
- \* darkness is found in: 02:13, 05:15, 06:03, 11:06
- \* David is found in: 01:01
- \* death, die, dead is found in: 02:15, 04:02, 06:03, 07:01, 07:26, 08:08, 09:02, 09:04, 09:11, 10:01
- \* descendant, descended from is found in: 01:01
- \* destiny, destine, destined is found in: 02:13, 09:03
- \* dream is found in: 05:02
- \* drunk, drunkard is found in: 10:16

- \* earth, earthly is found in: 01:04, 03:21, 05:02, 07:19, 08:14, 11:01, 12:06
- \* envy, covet is found in: 04:04, 09:06
- \* everlasting, eternal, eternity is found in: 03:11, 12:05
- \* evil, wicked, wickedness is found in: 02:17, 03:16, 04:02, 05:01, 05:13, 05:15, 06:01, 07:15, 07:23, 08:08, 08:12, 09:02, 09:11, 10:05, 10:13, 12:13
- \* face is found in: 07:03
- \* favor, favorable, favoritism is found in: 09:11
- \* fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh is found in: 05:06, 07:17, 09:02, 12:05, 12:13
- \* feast is found in: 07:01, 10:16
- \* flesh is found in: 04:05, 05:06
- \* flock, herd is found in: 02:07
- \* fool, foolish, folly is found in: 01:16, 02:03, 02:11, 02:13, 02:19, 04:05, 04:13, 05:01, 06:07, 07:03, 07:08, 07:17, 07:23, 09:17, 10:01, 10:12
- \* forever is found in: 01:04, 03:14
- \* fountain, spring is found in: 12:06
- \* generation is found in: 01:04
- \* gift is found in: 03:12, 05:19
- \* God is found in: 01:12, 02:24, 02:26, 03:08, 03:14, 05:02, 05:18, 06:01, 07:13, 07:17, 07:26, 08:02, 08:12, 09:01, 09:06, 11:04, 11:09, 12:06, 12:13
- \* gold is found in: 02:07, 12:06
- \* good, goodness is found in: 02:03, 02:24, 03:12, 04:09, 05:18, 06:03, 06:11, 07:01, 07:11, 07:19, 09:02, 09:06, 09:17, 11:06, 12:13
- \* grace, gracious is found in: 10:12
- \* hades, sheol is found in: 09:09
- \* hand, right hand, to hand over is found in: 02:11, 02:24, 04:01, 05:06, 05:13, 07:17, 09:01, 09:09
- \* harvest is found in: 11:04
- \* heal, cure is found in: 03:01
- \* heart is found in: 01:16, 02:01, 02:09, 02:15, 02:21, 03:11, 03:16, 05:02, 06:03, 07:01, 07:07, 07:21, 08:05, 08:16, 09:03, 10:01, 11:09
- \* heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly is found in: 01:12, 02:03, 03:01, 05:02, 10:20
- \* holy, holiness is found in: 08:10
- \* honor, to honor is found in: 03:14, 06:01, 08:12, 10:01
- \* hope is found in: 09:04

- \* horse is found in: 10:05
- \* house is found in: 07:01
- \* house of God, Yahweh's house is found in: 05:01
- \* inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir is found in: 07:11
- \* Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel is found in: 01:12
- \* Jerusalem is found in: 01:01, 01:12, 01:16, 02:07
- \* joy, joyful is found in: 02:26, 09:06, 11:09
- \* judge, judgment is found in: 03:16, 11:09, 12:13
- \* judge is found in: 06:09
- \* just, justice, justly is found in: 03:16, 05:08
- \* king is found in: 01:01, 01:12, 02:07, 04:13, 05:08, 08:02, 09:13, 10:16
- \* kingdom is found in: 04:13
- \* know, knowledge, make known is found in: 01:16, 02:19, 02:26, 04:13, 05:01, 05:08, 06:05, 07:11, 08:16, 09:01, 09:09, 10:13, 11:09, 12:08
- \* labor, laborer is found in: 01:01, 02:09, 02:21, 03:08, 04:04, 04:09, 05:18, 08:14
- \* life, live, living, alive is found in: 02:03, 02:17, 04:02, 05:01, 05:15, 07:01, 07:11, 08:01, 09:03, 09:09, 10:18
- \* light is found in: 02:13, 11:06
- \* lion is found in: 09:04
- \* livestock is found in: 02:07
- \* lord, master, sir is found in: 02:19, 12:10
- \* love is found in: 03:08, 05:10, 09:01, 09:06
- \* messenger is found in: 05:06
- \* mighty, might is found in: 06:09
- \* mind is found in: 01:12, 02:03, 05:19, 09:01, 10:20, 12:01, 12:06
- \* mourn, mourning is found in: 03:04, 07:01, 12:05
- \* name is found in: 07:01
- \* neighbor is found in: 04:04
- \* noble, nobleman is found in: 10:16
- \* oath, swear, swear by is found in: 08:02, 09:02
- \* obey, obedient, obedience is found in: 04:15, 08:02
- \* oil is found in: 09:06



- \* oppress, oppression, oppressor is found in: 04:01, 05:08
- \* palace is found in: 02:07, 12:03
- \* patient, patience is found in: 07:08
- \* peace, peaceful is found in: 03:08
- \* perish, perishing, perishable is found in: 07:15
- \* pit is found in: 10:08
- \* power, powers is found in: 04:01, 05:08, 07:19, 08:08
- \* praise is found in: 04:15, 08:10
- \* priest, priesthood is found in: 05:06
- \* prison, prisoner, imprison is found in: 04:13
- \* profit, profitable is found in: 01:01, 02:11, 03:08, 04:05, 05:15
- \* prosper, prosperity, prosperous is found in: 11:06
- \* proud, pride, prideful is found in: 07:08
- \* proverb is found in: 12:08, 12:10
- \* province, provincial is found in: 02:07, 05:08
- \* raise, rise, risen, arise, arose is found in: 01:04, 04:15
- \* rebuke is found in: 07:05
- \* receive is found in: 05:19
- \* rejoice is found in: 02:09, 03:12, 05:19
- \* rest is found in: 02:21, 06:05
- \* reward is found in: 02:09, 09:04
- \* righteous, righteousness is found in: 03:16, 07:15, 07:27, 08:14, 09:01
- \* ruler, rulers, rule is found in: 02:07, 07:19, 08:02, 09:17, 10:04
- \* sacrifice, offering is found in: 05:01, 09:02
- \* save, safe is found in: 09:13
- \* seed is found in: 11:06
- \* servant, slave, slavery is found in: 02:07, 07:21, 08:08, 10:05
- \* shadow is found in: 06:11, 08:12
- \* shepherd, to shepherd is found in: 01:12, 02:11, 02:17, 02:26, 04:04, 04:15, 06:09, 12:10
- \* siege, besiege is found in: 09:13
- \* silver is found in: 02:07, 05:10, 12:06

- \* sin, sinful, sinner, sinning is found in: 02:26, 05:06, 07:19, 07:26, 08:12, 09:02, 09:17
- \* snare, trap is found in: 07:26, 09:11
- \* son, son of is found in: 04:07, 12:12
- \* soul is found in: 02:21
- \* spirit, spiritual is found in: 03:21, 07:08, 12:06
- \* strength, strengthen is found in: 09:09, 09:16, 10:10, 11:09
- \* submit, in submission is found in: 04:15
- \* teacher, Teacher is found in: 01:01, 01:12, 07:27, 12:08
- \* test is found in: 02:01, 03:18
- \* thorn, thistle is found in: 07:05
- \* time is found in: 01:09, 03:01, 03:08, 03:16, 09:11, 12:03
- \* tremble is found in: 12:03
- \* trouble, troubles, troubled is found in: 08:05
- \* true, truth, come true is found in: 02:24, 04:13, 12:10
- \* unclean is found in: 09:02
- \* understand, understanding is found in: 02:13, 07:23, 08:16, 09:01, 09:11
- \* upright, uprightness is found in: 07:29, 12:10
- \* vineyard is found in: 02:04
- \* voice is found in: 12:04
- \* vow is found in: 05:04
- \* walk is found in: 04:15
- \* watch, watchman is found in: 05:10
- \* water, waters is found in: 11:01
- \* well, cistern is found in: 12:06
- \* wine, wineskin, new wine is found in: 02:03, 09:06, 10:18
- \* wise, wisdom is found in: 01:12, 01:16, 02:03, 02:09, 02:13, 02:19, 02:26, 04:13, 06:07, 07:03, 07:10, 07:15, 07:23, 08:01, 08:16, 09:01, 09:09, 09:16, 10:01, 10:10, 12:08
- \* womb is found in: 05:15, 11:04
- \* word is found in: 05:02, 07:21, 08:02, 09:16, 10:12, 10:20, 12:10
- \* works, deeds, work, acts is found in: 01:12, 02:11, 03:11, 03:16, 03:21, 04:04, 04:05, 05:06, 07:13, 08:10, 08:16, 09:01, 09:06, 10:04, 11:04, 12:13

## **Ecclesiastes 1 General Notes**

### **Structure and formatting**

Some translations prefer to set apart extended quotations, prayers or songs. The ULB and many other English translations indent the lines of 1:2-18, which is an extended quotation.

### **Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter**

#### **Tone**

The tone of this chapter is sad, or depressing. The author believes that everything in life is pointless. The metaphors in this chapter all describe the idea that nothing ever changes. This is also known as “fatalism.” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Metaphor](#))

#### **Links:**

- [Ecclesiastes 01:01 Notes](#)
- [Introduction to Ecclesiastes](#)

## Ecclesiastes 1:1-3

### UDB:

<sup>1</sup> These are the words and sayings of the descendant of King David, who is king in Jerusalem. The people call me ‘The Teacher.’

<sup>2</sup> The Teacher says, “Nothing is permanent.

It is all like the morning mist or the wind;

It goes and comes, but for what reason?”

<sup>3</sup> What do people gain from all the work that they do here on the earth?”

### ULB:

**1** <sup>1</sup> These are the words of the Teacher, the descendant of David and king in Jerusalem. <sup>2</sup> The Teacher says this.

”Like a vapor of mist,

like a breeze in the wind,

everything vanishes, leaving many questions.

<sup>3</sup> What profit does mankind gain from all the work that they labor at under the sun?”

### translationWords:

- teacher, Teacher
- descendant, descended from
- David
- king
- Jerusalem
- profit, profitable
- labor, laborer

### translationNotes:

- **Like a vapor of mist, like a breeze in the wind** - These two phrases mean the same thing and are combined for emphasis. (See: [Parallelism](#))
- **What profit does mankind gain ... under the sun?** - “Mankind gains no profit ... under the sun.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ecclesiastes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 01 General Notes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 01 Translation Questions](#)

**Ecclesiastes 1:4-6****UDB:**

<sup>4</sup> Each year old people die and babies are born,  
but the earth never changes.

<sup>5</sup> Each morning the sun rises, and each evening it sets,  
and then it hurries around to where it started from.

<sup>6</sup> The wind blows south,  
and then it turns around to start blowing to the north.  
It goes around and around in circles.

**ULB:**

<sup>4</sup> One generation goes,  
and another generation comes,  
but the earth remains forever.

<sup>5</sup> The sun rises,  
and it goes down  
and hurries back to the place where it rises again.

<sup>6</sup> The wind blows south  
and circles around to the north,  
always going around along its pathway  
and coming back again.

**translationWords:**

- generation
- earth, earthly
- forever
- raise, rise, risen, arise, arose

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - The writer is presenting the natural order of life as he understands it.

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ecclesiastes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 01 General Notes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 01 Translation Questions](#)

**Ecclesiastes 1:7-8****UDB:**

<sup>7</sup> All the streams flow into the sea,

but the sea is never full.

The water returns under the earth and comes up again into the rivers;

then it flows to the sea again.

<sup>8</sup> Everything is so unsatisfactory

that we do not even want to talk about it.

We see the same things,

and we become bored with them.

We hear the same things,

but we want to hear something more.

**ULB:**

<sup>7</sup> All the rivers flow into the sea,

but the sea is never full.

To the place where the rivers go,

there they go again.

<sup>8</sup> Everything becomes wearisome,

and no one can explain it.

The eye is not satisfied by what it sees,

nor is the ear fulfilled by what it hears.

**translationWords:****translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - Writer continues with natural order observations.
- **Everything becomes wearisome** - Since man is unable to explain these things, it becomes futile to try. AT: “everything becomes tiring”
- **The eye is not satisfied by what it sees** - One can not simply deduce to a simple explanation what one sees. AT: “A person is not satisfied by what his eyes see” (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **nor is the ear fulfilled by what it hears** - One can not simply deduce to a simple explanation what one hears. AT: “nor is a person content by what his ears hear”



**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ecclesiastes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 01 General Notes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 01 Translation Questions](#)

**Ecclesiastes 1:9-11****UDB:**

<sup>9</sup> Everything continues to be the same as it has always been.

Things that happen have happened previously, and they will happen again.

What has been done before will be done again.

There is nothing really new in this world.

<sup>10</sup> Sometimes people say, "Look at this! This is something new!"

But it has existed previously.

It existed before we were born.

<sup>11</sup> People do not remember the things that happened long ago,

and in the future, people will not remember what we are doing now.

**ULB:**

<sup>9</sup> Whatever has been is what will be,

and whatever has been done is what will be done.

There is nothing new under the sun.

<sup>10</sup> Is there anything about which it may be said,

'Look, this is new'?

Whatever exists has already existed for a long time,

during ages which came long before us.

<sup>11</sup> No one seems to remember the things that happened in ancient times,

and the things that happened much later

and that will happen in the future

will not likely be remembered either."

**translationWords:**

- time
- age

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - There is nothing new regarding man and his activities.
- **whatever has been done is what will be done** - AT: “whatever people have done is what people will do in the future” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **Is there anything about which it may be said, ‘Look, this is new’?** - AT: “There is nothing about which someone may say, ‘Look, this is new.’” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [Active or Passive](#))
- **will not likely be remembered either** - AT: “people will not likely remember them either”

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ecclesiastes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 01 General Notes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 01 Translation Questions](#)

## Ecclesiastes 1:12-15

### UDB:

<sup>12</sup> I, the Teacher, have been the king of Israel for many years, ruling in Jerusalem. <sup>13</sup> By using my wisdom, I concentrated on understanding everything that was being done on the earth. It is a task that wears me out, just like anyone else who tries it. <sup>14</sup> It seems that nothing that happens on the earth really enables us to do anything useful. It is like trying to control the wind.

<sup>15</sup> Many things that are crooked cannot be caused to become straight.

We cannot count things that we cannot see.

### ULB:

<sup>12</sup> I am the Teacher, and I have been king over Israel in Jerusalem. <sup>13</sup> I applied my mind to study and to search out by wisdom everything that is done under heaven. That search is a burdensome task that God has given to the children of mankind to be busy with. <sup>14</sup> I have seen all the deeds that are done under the sun, and look, they all amount to vapor and an attempt to shepherd the wind.

<sup>15</sup> The twisted cannot be straightened!

The missing cannot be counted!

### translationWords:

- teacher, Teacher
- king
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- Jerusalem
- mind
- wise, wisdom
- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- burden
- God
- works, deeds, work, acts
- shepherd, to shepherd

### translationNotes:

- **I applied my mind** - AT: "I determined" or "I made up my mind"
- **to study and to search out** - These two phrases mean the same thing and emphasize diligently he studied. (See: **Doublet**)

- **children of mankind** - AT: “human beings” (See: [Idiom](#))
- **all the deeds that are done** - AT: “everything that people do” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **vapor** - “mist” or “breath.” It does not last. AT: “temporary” or “worthless.” What people do is like vapor because it does not last and is worthless. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **an attempt to shepherd the wind** - The Teacher says that the things that people do are like trying to catch the wind or to keep the wind from blowing. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **The twisted cannot be straightened! The missing cannot be counted!** - AT: “People cannot straighten things that are twisted! They cannot count what is not there!” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ecclesiastes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 01 General Notes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 01 Translation Questions](#)

## Ecclesiastes 1:16-18

### UDB:

<sup>16</sup> I said to myself, “I am wiser than any of those who ruled in Jerusalem before me. I am wiser and know more than any of them!” <sup>17</sup> So I determined to learn more about being wise, and also to learn about doing things that are very stupid and foolish. But I found out that trying to understand those things was also useless, like trying to control the wind. <sup>18</sup> Anyone who becomes very wise also becomes very frustrated. The more one knows, the sadder he becomes.

### ULB:

<sup>16</sup> I have spoken to my heart saying, “Look, I have acquired greater wisdom than all who were before me in Jerusalem. My mind has seen great wisdom and knowledge.” <sup>17</sup> So I applied my heart to know wisdom and also madness and folly. I came to understand that this also was an attempt to shepherd the wind. <sup>18</sup> For in the abundance of wisdom there is much frustration, and he who increases knowledge increases sorrow.

### translationWords:

- [heart](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [wise, wisdom](#)
- [know, knowledge, make known](#)
- [fool, foolish, folly](#)

### translationNotes:

- **I applied my heart** - AT: “I determined” or “I made up my mind”
- **madness and folly** - The words “madness” and “folly” share similar meanings and refer to foolish thinking and behavior, respectively. (See: [Doublet](#))
- **an attempt to shepherd the wind** - See how you translated this in [1:14](#).

### Links:

- [Introduction to Ecclesiastes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 01 General Notes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 01 Translation Questions](#)

## **Ecclesiastes 2 General Notes**

### **Structure and formatting**

Some translations prefer to set apart extended quotations, prayers or songs. The ULB and many other English translations indent the lines of 2:10-26, which is an extended quotation.

### **Special concepts in this chapter**

#### **Pleasures**

When the author thought about the pointlessness of life, he decided to fill it with pointless pleasures. He believed that this type of living would have no effect on the world. Therefore, he indulged in every type of pleasure.

### **Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter**

#### **Assumed knowledge**

It is assumed that the author is going to reject the way of living in this chapter. He is certainly not encouraging this way of living even though he does not say this explicitly. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### **Links:**

- [Ecclesiastes 02:01 Notes](#)

## Ecclesiastes 2:1-2

### UDB:

<sup>1</sup> Then I said to myself, “Well, I will try to do everything that I enjoy. I will find out whether doing what I enjoy can truly enable me to be happy.” But I found out that doing that was also useless. <sup>2</sup> So I said to myself, “It is foolish to laugh all the time, and continually doing what makes me happy does not bring any lasting benefit.”

### ULB:

<sup>2</sup> <sup>1</sup> I said in my heart, “Come now, I will test you with happiness. So enjoy pleasure.” But look, this also was just a temporary breeze. <sup>2</sup> I said about laughter, “It is crazy,” and about pleasure, “What use is it?”

### translationWords:

- [heart](#)
- [test](#)

### translationNotes:

- **I said in my heart** - AT: “I said to myself” (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **I will test you with happiness** - Here the word “you” refers himself. AT: “I will test myself with things that make me happy” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))
- **So enjoy pleasure** - AT: “So I will enjoy things that please me” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))
- **I said about laughter, “It is crazy,”** - AT: “I said that it is crazy to laugh at things” (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))
- **What use is it?** - AT: “It is useless” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to Ecclesiastes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 02 General Notes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 02 Translation Questions](#)



## Ecclesiastes 2:3

### UDB:

<sup>3</sup> So, after thinking a lot about it, I decided to cheer myself up by drinking a lot of wine. While I was still trying to be wise, I acted stupidly. I tried to learn what people can do to be happy during the short time that they are alive on the earth.

### ULB:

<sup>3</sup> I explored in my heart how to gratify my desires with wine. I let my mind guide me with wisdom although I was still holding on to folly. I wanted to find out what is good for people to do under heaven during the days of their lives.

### translationWords:

- wine, wineskin, new wine
- mind
- wise, wisdom
- fool, foolish, folly
- good, goodness
- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- life, live, living, alive

### translationNotes:

- **I explored in my heart** - AT: "I thought hard about" (See: [Idiom](#))
- **to gratify my desires with wine** - AT: "to use wine to make myself happy" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))
- **I let my mind guide me with wisdom** - AT: "I thought about the things that wise people had taught me"
- **during the days of their lives** - AT: "as long as they live" (See: [Idiom](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to Ecclesiastes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 02 General Notes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 02 Translation Questions](#)

## Ecclesiastes 2:4-6

### UDB:

<sup>4</sup> I did great things. I caused houses to be built for myself and vineyards to be planted. <sup>5</sup> I made gardens and parks. Then I planted the gardens with many kinds of fruit trees. <sup>6</sup> I built pools of water to store water to irrigate the fruit trees.

### ULB:

<sup>4</sup> I accomplished great things. I built houses for myself and planted vineyards. <sup>5</sup> I built for myself gardens and parks; I planted all kinds of fruit trees in them. <sup>6</sup> I created pools of water to water a forest where trees were grown.

### translationWords:

- [vineyard](#)
- [create, creation, Creator](#)

### translationNotes:

- **I built houses for myself and planted vineyards** - The writer probably told people to do the work. AT: "I had people build houses and plant vineyards for me" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **gardens and parks** - These two words share similar meanings and refer to beautiful orchards of fruit trees. (See: [Doublet](#))
- **to water a forest** - "to provide water for a forest"
- **forest where trees were grown** - AT: "forest where trees grew" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to Ecclesiastes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 02 General Notes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 02 Translation Questions](#)

## Ecclesiastes 2:7-8

### UDB:

<sup>7</sup> I bought male and female slaves. Babies who later became my slaves were born in my palace. I also owned more livestock than any of the previous kings in Jerusalem had owned. <sup>8</sup> I also accumulated large amounts of silver and gold that were acquired from the treasures of kings and rulers of provinces. I owned men and women who sang for me, and I had many wives and concubines, whom men all over the world would enjoy possessing.

### ULB:

<sup>7</sup> I purchased male slaves and female slaves; I had slaves born in my palace. I also had large herds and flocks of livestock, much more than any king who ruled before me in Jerusalem. <sup>8</sup> I also accumulated for myself silver and gold, the treasures of kings and provinces. I got male and female singers for myself, and delights from the children of mankind, concubines and wives.[1]Modern versions interpret the last part of this verse in different ways: *everything that pleases people* , *concubines and everything that pleases men* , etc.

### translationWords:

- servant, slave, slavery
- palace
- flock, herd
- livestock
- king
- ruler, rulers, rule
- Jerusalem
- silver
- gold
- province, provincial
- concubine

### translationNotes:

- **I had slaves born in my palace** - AT: "I had slaves that were born in my palace" or "My slaves bore children and they also were my slaves"
- **the treasures of kings and provinces** - This refers to the gold and other wealth that neighboring countries were forced to pay to the king of Israel.
- **delights from the children of mankind, concubines and wives** - AT: "I greatly enjoyed my many wives and concubines, as any man would"

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ecclesiastes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 02 General Notes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 02 Translation Questions](#)

**Ecclesiastes 2:9-10****UDB:**

<sup>9</sup> So I gained more power and wealth than any king who had ruled before me in Jerusalem, and I allowed my wisdom to continue to guide me.

<sup>10</sup> I got everything that I saw and wanted.

I did everything that I thought would enable me to be happy.

All the things that I enjoyed were like a reward for all my hard work.

**ULB:**

<sup>9</sup> So I became greater and wealthier than all who were before me in Jerusalem, and my wisdom remained with me.

<sup>10</sup> Whatever my eyes desired,

I did not withhold from them.

I did not withhold my heart from any pleasure,

because my heart rejoiced in all my labor

and pleasure was my reward for all my work.

**translationWords:**

- wise, wisdom
- heart
- rejoice
- labor, laborer
- reward

**translationNotes:**

- **my wisdom remained with me** - “I continued to act wisely” or “I continued to be wise”
- **Whatever my eyes desired** - AT: “Whatever I saw and desired” (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **I did not withhold from them** - This can be stated positively. AT: “I got for myself”
- **I did not withhold my heart from any pleasure** - This can be stated positively. AT: “I allowed myself to enjoy everything that made me happy” (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Abstract Nouns](#))
- **my heart rejoiced** - AT: “I rejoiced”

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ecclesiastes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 02 General Notes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 02 Translation Questions](#)

**Ecclesiastes 2:11-12****UDB:**

<sup>11</sup> But then I thought about all the hard work that I had done to obtain all those things.

I saw that none of my work brought me any lasting benefit.

It was all like trying to control the wind.

<sup>12</sup> Then I started to think about being wise, and also about being foolish.

I said to myself, “I certainly do not think that anybody will be able to do anything better than I can.”

**ULB:**

<sup>11</sup> Then I looked on all the deeds that my hands had accomplished,

and on the work that I had done,

but again, everything was vapor and an attempt to shepherd the wind.

There was no profit under the sun in it.

<sup>12</sup> Then I turned to consider wisdom,

and also madness and folly.

For what can the next king do who comes after the king,

which has not already been done?

**translationWords:**

- works, deeds, work, acts
- hand, right hand, to hand over
- shepherd, to shepherd
- profit, profitable
- fool, foolish, folly

**translationNotes:**

- **all the deeds that my hands had accomplished** - AT: “all that I had accomplished” (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **vapor and an attempt to shepherd the wind** - See how you translated this in [1:14](#).
- **madness and folly** - See how you translated this in [1:17](#). (See: [Doublet](#))

- **For what can the next king do ... which has not already been done?** - The writer uses this question to emphasize his point that the next king will not be able to do anything more valuable than what he had already done. AT: “For the next king can do nothing ... which has not already been done.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **the next king ... who comes after the king** - “the king ... who succeeds the current king.” This was probably written by the current king, so “after the king” could also be translated as “after me” (UDB).

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ecclesiastes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 02 General Notes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 02 Translation Questions](#)



**Ecclesiastes 2:13-14****UDB:**

<sup>13</sup> And I thought, "Surely it is better to be wise than to be foolish,

like light is better than darkness,

<sup>14</sup> because wise people walk in the daylight and can see where they are going,

but foolish people walk in the darkness and cannot see where they are going."

But I also realized that both wise people and foolish people eventually die.

**ULB:**

<sup>13</sup> Then I began to understand

that wisdom has advantages over folly,

just as light is better than darkness.

<sup>14</sup> The wise man uses his eyes in his head to see where he is going,

but the fool walks in darkness,

although I know the same destiny is in store for everyone.

**translationWords:**

- understand, understanding
- wise, wisdom
- fool, foolish, folly
- light
- darkness
- destiny, destine, destined

**translationNotes:**

- **wisdom has advantages over folly, just as light is better than darkness** - Wisdom his better than folly, just as light is better than darkness. (See: **Simile**)
- **The wise man uses his eyes in his head to see where he is going** - AT: "The wise man is like a person who uses his eyes to see where he is going" (See: **Metaphor**)
- **uses his eyes in his head to see** - AT: "can see" (See: **Idiom**)
- **the fool walks in darkness** - AT: "the fool is like a person who walks in the dark" (See: **Metaphor**)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ecclesiastes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 02 General Notes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 02 Translation Questions](#)

**Ecclesiastes 2:15-16****UDB:**

<sup>15</sup> So I said to myself,

”I am very wise, but I will die at the end of my life like foolish people do.

So how has it benefited me to be very wise?

I do not understand why people consider that it is valuable to be wise.

<sup>16</sup> Wise people and foolish people all die.

And after we die, we will all eventually be forgotten.”

**ULB:**

<sup>15</sup> Then I said in my heart,

”What happens to the fool,

will also happen to me.

So what difference does it make if I am very wise?”

I concluded in my heart,

“This too is only vapor.”

<sup>16</sup> For the wise man, like the fool, is not remembered for very long.

In the days to come everything will have been long forgotten.

The wise man dies just like the fool dies.

**translationWords:**

- heart
- death, die, dead

**translationNotes:**

- **I said in my heart** - AT: “I said to myself” (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **So what difference does it make if I am very wise?** - The writer uses this question to emphasize his point that there is no benefit to being wise. AT: “So it makes no difference if I am very wise.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **I concluded in my heart** - AT: “I concluded”
- **vapor** - See how you translated this in [1:14](#).

- **the wise man, like the fool, is not remembered for very long** - AT: “people will not remember the wise man for very long, just as they do not remember the fool for very long” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **everything will have been long forgotten** - AT: “people will have long forgotten everything” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ecclesiastes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 02 General Notes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 02 Translation Questions](#)

## Ecclesiastes 2:17-18

### UDB:

<sup>17</sup> So I hated being alive, because all the work that we do here on the earth distressed me. It all seemed to be useless, like trying to control the wind.

<sup>18</sup> I also began to hate all the hard work that I had done here on the earth, because when I die, everything that I have acquired will belong to the one who inherits it after me.

### ULB:

<sup>17</sup> So I detested life because all the work done under the sun was evil to me. This was because everything is vapor and an attempt to shepherd the wind. <sup>18</sup> I hated all my accomplishments for which I had worked under the sun because I must leave them behind to the man who comes after me.

### translationWords:

- [life, live, living, alive](#)
- [evil, wicked, wickedness](#)
- [shepherd, to shepherd](#)

### translationNotes:

- **all the work done** - AT: “all the work that people do” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **vapor and an attempt to shepherd the wind** - See how you translated this in [1:14](#).

### Links:

- [Introduction to Ecclesiastes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 02 General Notes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 02 Translation Questions](#)

**Ecclesiastes 2:19-20****UDB:**

<sup>19</sup> And who knows whether that person will be wise or foolish? But even if he is foolish, he will acquire all the things that I worked very hard and wisely to get. <sup>20</sup> I thought about all the hard work that I had done in this world. It seemed useless, and I became depressed.

**ULB:**

<sup>19</sup> For who knows whether he will be a wise man or a fool? Yet he will be master over everything under the sun that my work and wisdom have built. This also is vapor. <sup>20</sup> Therefore my heart began to despair over all the work under the sun that I did.

**translationWords:**

- know, knowledge, make known
- wise, wisdom
- fool, foolish, folly
- lord, master, sir

**translationNotes:**

- **For who knows whether he will be a wise man or a fool?** - AT: "For no one knows whether he will be a wise man or a fool." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **he will be** - "he" refers to the person who will inherit Solomon's wealth.
- **my heart began to despair** - AT: "I began to despair" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ecclesiastes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 02 General Notes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 02 Translation Questions](#)

## Ecclesiastes 2:21-23

### UDB:

<sup>21</sup> Some people work wisely and skillfully, using the things that they have learned. But when they die, they leave everything, and someone who has not worked for those things acquires them. That fact also seemed to be senseless and caused me to be discouraged. <sup>22</sup> So it is useless for people to work for all they do. <sup>23</sup> Every day the work that they do causes them to experience pain and to be worried. And during the night their minds are not able to rest. That also shows how temporary everything is.

### ULB:

<sup>21</sup> For there might be someone who works with wisdom, with knowledge, and skill, but he will leave everything he has to a man who has not made any of it. This also is vapor and a great tragedy. <sup>22</sup> For what profit does the person gain who works so hard and tries in his heart to complete his labors under the sun? <sup>23</sup> Every day his work is painful and stressful, so at night his soul does not find rest. This also is vapor.

### translationWords:

- heart
- labor, laborer
- soul
- rest

### translationNotes:

- **a great tragedy** - “a great disaster”
- **For what profit does the person gain who works so hard and tries in his heart to complete his labors under the sun?** - AT: “For the person who works so hard and tries in his heart to complete his labors under the sun gains nothing.” (See: **Rhetorical Question**)
- **works so hard and tries in his heart** - These two phrases mean basically the same thing and emphasize how strenuously the person works. (See: **Parallelism**)
- **tries in his heart** - AT: “tries anxiously” (See: **Idiom**)
- **painful and stressful** - These two words mean basically the same thing and emphasize how difficult the person’s work is. (See: **Doublet**)
- **his soul does not find rest** - AT: “his mind does not rest” or “he continues to worry” (See: **Idiom** and **Metonymy**)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ecclesiastes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 02 General Notes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 02 Translation Questions](#)



## Ecclesiastes 2:24-25

### UDB:

<sup>24</sup> So I decided that the best thing that we can do is to enjoy what we eat and drink, and also to enjoy our work. And I realized that those things are what God intends for us. <sup>25</sup> There is absolutely no one who is able to enjoy those things if God does not give those things to him.

### ULB:

<sup>24</sup> There is nothing better for anyone than to simply eat and drink and be satisfied with what is good in his work. I saw that this truth comes from God's hand. <sup>25</sup> For who can eat or who can have any kind of pleasure apart from God?

### translationWords:

- good, goodness
- true, truth, come true
- God
- hand, right hand, to hand over

### translationNotes:

- **this truth comes from God's hand** - AT: "this truth comes from God" (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **For who can eat or who can have any kind of pleasure apart from God?** - AT: "For no one can eat or have any kind of pleasure apart from God." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to Ecclesiastes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 02 General Notes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 02 Translation Questions](#)

## Ecclesiastes 2:26

### UDB:

<sup>26</sup> God enables those who please him to be wise, to know many things, and to enjoy many things. But if sinful people work hard and become rich, God can take their money away from them and give it to those who please him. However, the reason for that is also something that is difficult for me to understand. It seems useless that they worked so hard; it is like trying to control the wind.

### ULB:

<sup>26</sup> For to anyone who pleases him, God gives wisdom and knowledge and joy. However, to the sinner he gives the work of gathering and storing up so that he may give it away to someone who pleases God. This also amounts to vapor and an attempt to shepherd the wind.

### translationWords:

- [God](#)
- [wise, wisdom](#)
- [know, knowledge, make known](#)
- [joy, joyful](#)
- [sin, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)
- [shepherd, to shepherd](#)

### translationNotes:

- **so that he may give it away to someone who pleases God** - The word “he” may refer either to God or to the sinner. The word “it” refers to what the sinner has gathered and stored. The following translation is one way of saying this without making it clear who it is that gives the things that were stored. AT: “so that the one who pleases God may have it”
- **vapor and an attempt to shepherd the wind** - See how you translated this in [1:14](#).

### Links:

- [Introduction to Ecclesiastes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 02 General Notes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 02 Translation Questions](#)

## **Ecclesiastes 3 General Notes**

### **Structure and formatting**

Some translations prefer to set apart extended quotations, prayers or songs. The ULB and many other English translations indent the lines of this chapter, which is an extended quotation.

### **Important figures of speech in this chapter**

#### **Parallelism**

The chapter uses parallelism with the phrase “a time to.” This gives the quotation a poetic style. Their overall purpose is to show that Yahweh directs the events of the world and therefore, they have purpose.

#### **Links:**

- [Ecclesiastes 03:01 Notes](#)

**Ecclesiastes 3:1-3****UDB:**

<sup>1</sup> There is a right time for everything,

a time for everything that we do in this world.

<sup>2</sup> There is the right time for any certain person to be born, and there is the right time for him to die.

There is the right time to plant crops, and there is the right time to harvest crops.

<sup>3</sup> There is the right time to kill people, and there is the right time to heal people.

There is the right time to tear things down, and there is the right time to build things.

**ULB:**

<sup>3</sup> <sup>1</sup> For everything there is an appointed time, and a season for every purpose under heaven.

<sup>2</sup> There is a time to be born and a time to die,

a time to plant and a time to pull up plants,

<sup>3</sup> a time to kill and a time to heal,

a time to tear down and a time to build up.

**translationWords:**

- appoint, appointed
- time
- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- heal, cure

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - The writer shifts into listing several merisms of life.
- **For everything there is an appointed time, and a season for every purpose** - These two phrases mean basically the same thing and are combined for emphasis. (See: **Parallelism**)
- **born and ... die ... kill and ... heal** - These are various aspects of life as described from one extreme to the other. (See: **Merism**)

- **a time to pull up plants** - Possible meanings are 1) “a time to harvest” or 2) “a time to weed” or 3) “a time to uproot.”

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ecclesiastes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 03 General Notes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 03 Translation Questions](#)

**Ecclesiastes 3:4-5****UDB:**

<sup>4</sup> There is the right time to cry, and there is the right time to laugh.

There is the right time to mourn, and there is the right time to dance joyfully.

<sup>5</sup> There is the right time to throw away stones from a field, and there is the right time to gather stones to build walls.

There is the right time to embrace people, and there is the right time to keep from embracing them.

**ULB:**

<sup>4</sup> There is a time to weep and a time to laugh,

a time to mourn and a time to dance,

<sup>5</sup> a time to throw away stones and a time to gather stones,

a time to embrace other people, and a time to refrain from embracing.

**translationWords:**

- [mourn, mourning](#)

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - The writer continues with merisms of life.
- **weep and ... laugh ... mourn and ... dance** - These are various aspects of life as described from one extreme to the other. (See: [Merism](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ecclesiastes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 03 General Notes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 03 Translation Questions](#)

## **Ecclesiastes 3:6-7**

### **UDB:**

<sup>6</sup> There is the right time to search for things, and there is the right time to stop searching for things.

There is the right time to keep things, and there is the right time to throw things away.

<sup>7</sup> There is the right time to tear our clothes because we are grieving, and there is the right time to mend our clothes.

There is the right time to say nothing, and there is the right time for speaking.

### **ULB:**

<sup>6</sup> There is a time to look for things and a time to stop looking,  
a time to keep things and a time to throw away things,

<sup>7</sup> a time to tear clothing and a time to repair clothing,  
a time to keep silent and a time to speak.

### **translationWords:**

### **translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - The writer continues with merisms of life.

### **Links:**

- [Introduction to Ecclesiastes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 03 General Notes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 03 Translation Questions](#)

**Ecclesiastes 3:8-10****UDB:**

<sup>8</sup> There is the right time when we should love things that people do, and there is the right time when we should hate things that people do.

There is the right time for war, and there is the right time for peace.

<sup>9</sup> What do people gain from all the work that they do? <sup>10</sup> I have seen the work that God has given people to do.

**ULB:**

<sup>8</sup> There is a time to love and a time to hate,  
a time for war and a time for peace. <sup>9</sup> What profit does the worker gain in his labor? <sup>10</sup> I have seen the work that God has given to human beings to complete.

**translationWords:**

- [love](#)
- [peace, peaceful](#)
- [time](#)
- [profit, profitable](#)
- [labor, laborer](#)
- [God](#)

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - The writer concludes his merisms of life.
- **What profit does the worker gain in his labor?** - This is a thought provoking question to focus the reader on the next discussion topic.

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ecclesiastes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 03 General Notes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 03 Translation Questions](#)



**Ecclesiastes 3:11****UDB:**

<sup>11</sup> God has fixed a time that is right for everything to happen. He has also caused people to realize that there are things that will last forever. But in spite of that, no one can completely understand everything that God has done, from the time that he starts doing things until he finishes them.

**ULB:**

<sup>11</sup> God has made everything suitable for its own time. He has also placed eternity in their hearts. But mankind cannot understand the deeds that God has done, from their beginning all the way to their end.

**translationWords:**

- [everlasting, eternal, eternity](#)
- [heart](#)
- [works, deeds, work, acts](#)

**translationNotes:**

- **placed eternity in their hearts** - Here the word “their” refers to human beings. AT: “placed eternity in the hearts of human beings”

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ecclesiastes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 03 General Notes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 03 Translation Questions](#)

**Ecclesiastes 3:12-13****UDB:**

<sup>12</sup> I know that the best thing for us people to do is to rejoice and to do good things during the time that we are alive. <sup>13</sup> And I also know that everyone should enjoy what they eat and drink, and enjoy the work that they do. Those are gifts that God gives to us.

**ULB:**

<sup>12</sup> I know that there is nothing better for anyone than to rejoice and to do good so long as he lives—  
<sup>13</sup> and that everyone should eat and drink, and should understand how to enjoy the good that comes from all his work. This is a gift from God.

**translationWords:**

- [rejoice](#)
- [good, goodness](#)
- [gift](#)

**translationNotes:**

- **should understand how to enjoy** - the writer is emphasizing the practice of enjoying one's work, not an intellectual knowledge of how to go about enjoying one's work.

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ecclesiastes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 03 General Notes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 03 Translation Questions](#)

**Ecclesiastes 3:14-15****UDB:**

<sup>14</sup> I also know that what God does endures forever. No one can add to what God does, and no one can take away from the things that he does. God does those things in order that people will honor him.

<sup>15</sup> Things that exist now have already existed previously,  
and things that will happen in the future have already happened previously;  
God causes us to want to understand mysteries.

**ULB:**

<sup>14</sup> I know that whatever God does lasts forever. Nothing can be added to it or taken away, because it is God who has done it so that people will approach him with honor.

<sup>15</sup> Whatever exists has already existed;  
whatever will exist has already existed.  
God makes human beings seek hidden things. [1]Instead of *God makes human beings seek hidden things*, other modern versions interpret this line in different ways.

**translationWords:**

- [God](#)
- [forever](#)
- [honor, to honor](#)

**translationNotes:**

- **Whatever exists has already existed** - See how you translated this phrase in [1:10](#).

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ecclesiastes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 03 General Notes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 03 Translation Questions](#)

## Ecclesiastes 3:16-17

### UDB:

<sup>16</sup> Furthermore, I saw that on this earth, even in the courts where we expect judges to make right decisions about what people had done, they did many wicked things.

<sup>17</sup> So I said to myself, “God will judge both righteous people and wicked people. There is certainly a time for him to do that because there is a time for him to do everything.”

### ULB:

<sup>16</sup> I have seen the wickedness that is under the sun, where there should be justice, and in place of righteousness, wickedness was there. <sup>17</sup> I said in my heart, “God will judge the righteous and the wicked at the right time for every matter and every deed.”

### translationWords:

- evil, wicked, wickedness
- just, justice, justly
- righteous, righteousness
- heart
- judge, judgment
- time
- works, deeds, work, acts

### translationNotes:

- **I have seen the wickedness ... wickedness was there** - These two phrases mean the same thing and emphasize how common wicked behavior is. (See: [Parallelism](#))
- **wickedness was there** - AT: “people often find wickedness” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **I said in my heart** - AT: “I said to myself” (UDB) (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **every matter and every deed** - These two phrases mean basically the same thing and refer to every action that people do. (See: [Doublet](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to Ecclesiastes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 03 General Notes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 03 Translation Questions](#)

## **Ecclesiastes 3:18**

### **UDB:**

<sup>18</sup> And regarding humans, I also said to myself, “God is testing us, to show us that in one way people are no different than animals.”

### **ULB:**

<sup>18</sup> I said in my heart, “God tests human beings to show them that they are like animals.”

### **translationWords:**

- [test](#)

### **translationNotes:**

### **Links:**

- [Introduction to Ecclesiastes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 03 General Notes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 03 Translation Questions](#)

**Ecclesiastes 3:19-20****UDB:**

<sup>19</sup> What happens to people happens to animals. Animals die, and people die. We all must breathe to remain alive. People have no advantage over animals in that way. Everything disappears so quickly. <sup>20</sup> People and animals all die and are buried. We are all made of soil, and when we die, our corpses become soil again.

**ULB:**

<sup>19</sup> For the fate of the children of mankind and the fate of animals is the same fate for them. The death of one is like the death of the other. The breath is the same for all of them. There is no advantage for mankind over the animals. For is not everything just a breath? <sup>20</sup> Everything is going to the same place. Everything comes from the dust, and everything returns to the dust.

**translationWords:****translationNotes:**

- **There is no advantage for mankind over the animals** - AT: "Mankind is no better off than the animals"
- **is not everything just a breath?** - AT: "Everything is just a breath" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ecclesiastes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 03 General Notes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 03 Translation Questions](#)

## Ecclesiastes 3:21-22

### UDB:

<sup>21</sup> No one knows if people go up and animals go down to the place where the dead are.

<sup>22</sup> So I think that the best thing for us people to do is to be happy about the work that we do, because that is what God has given to us. I say this because no one of us knows what happens to us after we die.

### ULB:

<sup>21</sup> Who knows whether the spirit of mankind goes upward and the spirit of animals goes downward into the earth?[1]Some modern versions have *Who knows the spirit of mankind, which goes upward, and the spirit of animals, which goes downward into the earth?* <sup>22</sup> So again I realized that there is nothing better for anyone than to take pleasure in his work, for that is his assignment. Who can bring him back to see what happens after him?

### translationWords:

- [spirit, spiritual](#)
- [earth, earthly](#)
- [works, deeds, work, acts](#)
- [assign, assigned](#)

### translationNotes:

- **Who knows whether the spirit ... into the earth?** - The writer is making a claim that animals do have a spirit. AT: “No one knows whether the spirit ... into the earth.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **there is nothing better for anyone than to** - See how you translated this phrase in [3:12](#).
- **Who can bring ... after him?** - No one has raised any person or animal from the dead. AT: “No one can bring ... after him.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to Ecclesiastes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 03 General Notes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 03 Translation Questions](#)

## **Ecclesiastes 4 General Notes**

### **Structure and formatting**

Some translations prefer to set apart extended quotations, prayers or songs. The ULB and many other English translations indent the lines of chapter 4, which is an extended quotation. Some lines are indented twice to further set them apart.

### **Important figures of speech in this chapter**

#### **Irony**

The teacher looks at the oppression in the world and is saddened by it, but he is the king and has the power to change things. He also laments being alone, even though he has many wives, children and concubines. (See: [oppress](#), [oppression](#), [oppressor](#), [lament](#), [lamentation](#) and [Irony](#))

#### **Links:**

- [Ecclesiastes 04:01 Notes](#)



**Ecclesiastes 4:1****UDB:**

<sup>1</sup> I thought some more about all the suffering that people are made to experience on the earth.

I thought about the tears of people who were oppressed

and who had no one to comfort them.

Those who oppress them have power,

and there is no one able to comfort the oppressed.

**ULB:**

<sup>4</sup> <sup>1</sup> Once again I thought about all the oppression that is done under the sun.

Look at the tears of oppressed people.

There is no comforter for them.

Power is in the hand of their oppressors,

but oppressed people have no comforter.

**translationWords:**

- oppress, oppression, oppressor
- comfort, comforter
- power, powers
- hand, right hand, to hand over

**translationNotes:**

- **Power is in the hand of their oppressors** - AT: "Their oppressors have great authority" (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **but oppressed people have no comforter** - No one with authority is defending the oppressed.

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ecclesiastes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 04 General Notes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 04 Translation Questions](#)

**Ecclesiastes 4:2-3****UDB:**

<sup>2</sup> So I thought that those who are already dead are more fortunate  
than those who are still alive.

<sup>3</sup> And those who have not yet been born  
are even more fortunate than those two kinds of people,  
because those who have not been born have not seen all the evil things that  
are done on the earth.

**ULB:**

<sup>2</sup> So I congratulate dead people, those who have already died,  
not the living, those who are still alive.

<sup>3</sup> However, more fortunate than both of them is the one who has not yet  
lived,  
the one who has not seen any of the evil acts that are done under  
the sun.

**translationWords:**

- death, die, dead
- life, live, living, alive
- evil, wicked, wickedness

**translationNotes:**

- **more fortunate than both of them is the one who has not yet lived** - AT: “the one who has not yet been born is better off than both of them”

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ecclesiastes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 04 General Notes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 04 Translation Questions](#)

**Ecclesiastes 4:4****UDB:**

<sup>4</sup> I also thought about all the hard work that people do and the things they are able to accomplish. And I thought about how someone who works hard sometimes makes his neighbor jealous. I decided that this also is something that is not accomplishing anything useful. It is like trying to control the wind.

**ULB:**

<sup>4</sup> Then I saw that every act of labor and every skillful work became the envy of one's neighbor. This also is vapor and an attempt to shepherd the wind.

**translationWords:**

- [labor, laborer](#)
- [works, deeds, work, acts](#)
- [envy, covet](#)
- [neighbor](#)
- [shepherd, to shepherd](#)

**translationNotes:**

- **the envy of one's neighbor** - possible meanings are 1) The neighbor envy's the object his neighbor made or 2) the neighbor envy's the skills his neighbor has.
- **vapor and an attempt to shepherd the wind** - No one can control or direct the wind like they can animals. See how you translated this in [1:14](#).

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ecclesiastes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 04 General Notes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 04 Translation Questions](#)

**Ecclesiastes 4:5-6****UDB:**

<sup>5</sup> Foolish people refuse to work.

They sit idly with their hands folded and do not work.

So they ruin themselves.

<sup>6</sup> So some say, "It is better to be content with working quietly for a little bit of money,

than to work anxiously and try to get a lot of money,

which is as useless as trying to control the wind."

**ULB:**

<sup>5</sup> The fool folds his hands and does not work,

so his food is his own flesh.

<sup>6</sup> But better is a handful of profit with quiet work

than two handfuls with the work that tries to shepherd the wind.

**translationWords:**

- [fool, foolish, folly](#)
- [works, deeds, work, acts](#)
- [flesh](#)
- [profit, profitable](#)

**translationNotes:**

- **folds his hands and does not work**  - To fold the hands is a gesture of laziness and is another way of saying that the person refuses to work. (See: [Idiom](#) and [Parallelism](#))
- **so his food is his own flesh**  - AT: "as a result, he causes his own ruin." (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **work that tries to shepherd the wind**  - Not all work is profitable. Some work is not profitable like trying to control the wind. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ecclesiastes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 04 General Notes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 04 Translation Questions](#)

**Ecclesiastes 4:7-8****UDB:**

<sup>7</sup> I thought about something else that happens on the earth that seems useless.

<sup>8</sup> There are people who live alone;

they do not have a family nor even children or any brothers or sisters living with them.

Every day they work very hard without stopping; they make a lot of money,

but they are never satisfied with the things that they get.

They ask themselves,

”Why am I working so hard; whom am I actually helping?

Why am I not doing things that I would enjoy doing?

What I have been doing seems useless.” This is very bad.

**ULB:**

<sup>7</sup> Then I thought again about more futility, more vanishing vapor under the sun.

<sup>8</sup> There is the kind of man who is alone.

He does not have anyone, no son or brother.

There is no end to all his work,

and his eyes are not satisfied with gaining wealth.

He wonders, ”For whom am I toiling

and depriving myself of pleasure?”

This also is vapor, a bad situation.

**translationWords:**

- son, son of
- brother

**translationNotes:**

- **no son or brother** - This person has no family.
- **his eyes are not satisfied** - AT: “he is not satisfied” (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **For whom am I toiling and depriving myself of pleasure?** - AT: “Will anyone benefit from me working hard and not enjoying myself?” or “My work does not benefit anyone and I am not enjoying myself.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ecclesiastes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 04 General Notes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 04 Translation Questions](#)

**Ecclesiastes 4:9-11****UDB:**

<sup>9</sup> Having someone work with you is better than being by yourself all the time.

If you have a friend, he can help you to do your work.

<sup>10</sup> If you fall down, he can help you get up again.

But if you fall down when you are alone, you will have trouble,  
because there is no one to help you stand up.

<sup>11</sup> Similarly, if two people lie down together,

they can help each other to remain warm.

But someone who sleeps alone will certainly not be warm.

**ULB:**

<sup>9</sup> Two people work better than one;

together they can earn a good pay for their labor.

<sup>10</sup> For if one falls, the other can lift up his friend.

However, sorrow follows the one who is alone when he falls  
if there is no one to lift him up.

<sup>11</sup> If two lie down together, they can be warm,

but how can one be warm alone?

**translationWords:**

- good, goodness
- labor, laborer

**translationNotes:**

- **If two lie down together, they can be warm** - The writer speaks of two people keeping each other warm on a cold night. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **how can one be warm alone?** - AT: “a person cannot be warm when he is alone.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ecclesiastes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 04 General Notes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 04 Translation Questions](#)



**Ecclesiastes 4:12****UDB:**

<sup>12</sup> Someone who is alone can easily be attacked and defeated by another person,  
but two people can help each other and resist someone who attacks them.

Three people can defend themselves even more easily,  
like a rope that is made from three cords is harder to break than a rope made from two cords.

**ULB:**

<sup>12</sup> One man alone can be overpowered,  
but two can withstand an attack,  
and a three-strand rope is not quickly broken.

**translationWords:****translationNotes:**

- **withstand an attack** - “defend themselves against an attack”
- **a three-strand rope is not quickly broken** - AT: “people cannot easily break a rope made with three strands” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ecclesiastes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 04 General Notes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 04 Translation Questions](#)

## Ecclesiastes 4:13-14

### UDB:

<sup>13</sup> A young man who is poor but wise is a better person than a foolish old king who refuses to pay attention when people try to give him good advice. <sup>14</sup> It is possible for a young man like that to succeed and some day become king, even if his parents were poor or even if he was in prison in the past.

### ULB:

<sup>13</sup> It is better to be a poor but wise youth than an old and foolish king who no longer knows how to listen to warnings. <sup>14</sup> This is true even if the young man becomes king from prison, or even if he was born poor in his kingdom.

### translationWords:

- wise, wisdom
- fool, foolish, folly
- king
- know, knowledge, make known
- true, truth, come true
- prison, prisoner, imprison
- kingdom

### translationNotes:

- **he was born poor in his kingdom** - AT: "he was born to poor parents who lived in the land that he would someday rule"

### Links:

- [Introduction to Ecclesiastes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 04 General Notes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 04 Translation Questions](#)

## Ecclesiastes 4:15-16

### UDB:

<sup>15</sup> But then some other young man becomes king, and everyone starts to support him. <sup>16</sup> Large crowds of people crowd around him. But after a few years, they will be tired of him, too. So it is all senseless, like trying to control the wind.

### ULB:

<sup>15</sup> However, I saw everyone who was alive and walking around under the sun submitting themselves to another young man who rose up as king. <sup>16</sup> There is no end to all the people who want to obey the new king, but later many of them will no longer praise him. Surely this situation is vapor and an attempt to shepherd the wind.

### translationWords:

- [walk](#)
- [submit, in submission](#)
- [raise, rise, risen, arise, arose](#)
- [obey, obedient, obedience](#)
- [praise](#)
- [shepherd, to shepherd](#)

### translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Instead of choosing the wise youth, the people choose the king's son who may not be any wiser.
- **alive and walking around** - The words "alive" and "walking around" mean basically the same thing and are combined for emphasis. (See: [Parallelism](#) and [Idiom](#))
- **There is no end to all the people** - AT: "There are very many people" (See: [Hyperbole](#))
- **vapor and an attempt to shepherd the wind** - See how you translated this in [1:14](#).

### Links:

- [Introduction to Ecclesiastes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 04 General Notes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 04 Translation Questions](#)

## **Ecclesiastes 5 General Notes**

### **Structure and formatting**

Some translations prefer to set apart extended quotations, prayers or songs. The ULB and many other English translations indent the lines of chapter 5, which is an extended quotation. Some lines are indented twice to further set them apart.

### **Special concepts in this chapter**

#### **Materialism**

The author describes the pointlessness of pursuing material things. This is known as “materialism.” Those who pursue after things will always want more. At the end of their life, they will not be able to use these things.

#### **Links:**

- [Ecclesiastes 05:01 Notes](#)

**Ecclesiastes 5:1****UDB:**

<sup>1</sup> Be careful when you approach God in his house. Listen well to him. That is better than offering sacrifices to him and then not obeying him, which is foolish.

**ULB:**

5 <sup>1</sup> Guard your conduct when you go to the house of God. Go there to listen. Listening is better than when fools offer sacrifices while not knowing that what they do in life is wicked.

**translationWords:**

- [house of God, Yahweh's house](#)
- [fool, foolish, folly](#)
- [sacrifice, offering](#)
- [know, knowledge, make known](#)
- [life, live, living, alive](#)
- [evil, wicked, wickedness](#)

**translationNotes:**

- **Go there to listen** - It is more important to go to the temple to listen and learn of God's law in order to obey God than it is to offer sacrifices but continue to sin against God.

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ecclesiastes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 05 General Notes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 05 Translation Questions](#)

**Ecclesiastes 5:2-3****UDB:**

<sup>2</sup> Think carefully before you speak

and do not be too quick to promise God that you will do something.

Do not forget that God is in heaven and that he can do anything,

while you, on the other hand, are here on the earth.

So think carefully before you speak.

<sup>3</sup> If you are continually thinking and worrying about things,

you will have bad dreams about them and not rest well.

And the more you talk,

the more likely it will be that you will say things that are foolish.

**ULB:**

<sup>2</sup> Do not be too quick to speak with your mouth,

and do not let your heart be too quick to bring any matter up before God.

God is in heaven, but you are on earth,

so let your words be few.

<sup>3</sup> If you have too many things to do and worry about, you will probably have bad dreams.

The more words you speak, the more foolish things you will probably say .

**translationWords:**

- heart
- God
- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- earth, earthly
- word
- dream

**translationNotes:**

- **speak with your mouth** - To make a promise or vow to God.
- **Do not be too quick ... do not let your heart be too quick** - These two phrases mean the same thing. (See: [Parallelism](#) and [Synecdoche](#))
- **let your words be few** - “do not say too much”

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ecclesiastes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 05 General Notes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 05 Translation Questions](#)

**Ecclesiastes 5:4-5****UDB:**

<sup>4</sup> When you solemnly promise God that you will do something, do not foolishly delay in doing it, because God is not pleased with foolish people. Do all the things that you promise God that you will do. <sup>5</sup> It is better to not promise anything than to promise to do something and then not do it.

**ULB:**

<sup>4</sup> When you make a vow to God, do not delay to do it, for God has no pleasure in fools. Do what you vow you will do. <sup>5</sup> It is better not to make a vow than to make one that you do not carry out.

**translationWords:**

- **VOW**

**translationNotes:**

- **for God has no pleasure in fools** - One characteristic of a fool is to make promises or vows that they have no intention of keeping or fulfilling.

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ecclesiastes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 05 General Notes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 05 Translation Questions](#)



## Ecclesiastes 5:6-7

### UDB:

<sup>6</sup> Do not let the things that you promise to do cause you to sin by not doing them. And if you promise God that you will do something but then do not do it, do not say to God's priest that it was a mistake for you to promise to do that. If you do that, God can destroy everything you have worked to accomplish. <sup>7</sup> Promising to do something and not doing it is like having a useless dream. Instead, honor God by doing what you promised him that you would do.

### ULB:

<sup>6</sup> Do not allow your mouth to cause your flesh to sin. Do not say to the priest's messenger, "That vow was a mistake." Why make God angry by vowing falsely, provoking God to destroy the work of your hands? <sup>7</sup> For in many dreams, as in many words, there is meaningless vapor. So fear God.

### translationWords:

- [flesh](#)
- [sin, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)
- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [messenger](#)
- [angry, anger](#)
- [works, deeds, work, acts](#)
- [hand, right hand, to hand over](#)
- [fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh](#)

### translationNotes:

- **Do not allow your mouth to cause your flesh to sin** - "Do not let what you say cause you to sin" (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Synecdoche](#))
- **Why make God angry ... hands?** - "It would be foolish to make God angry ... hands." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **destroy the work of your hands** - "destroy everything you do" (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **For in many dreams, as in many words, there is meaningless vapor** - "Multiplying words does not give them substance, just like having many dreams make them any more real."

### Links:

- [Introduction to Ecclesiastes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 05 General Notes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 05 Translation Questions](#)

## Ecclesiastes 5:8-9

### UDB:

<sup>8</sup> Do not be surprised if you see poor people being oppressed. There are people able to stop others from oppressing them, but even these people are under the power of someone even higher. <sup>9</sup> Even though people throughout the land own their fields, the king forces them to give him some of the crops that they harvest.

### ULB:

<sup>8</sup> When you see the poor being oppressed and robbed of just and right treatment in your province, do not be astonished as if no one knows, because there are people in power who watch those under them, and there are even higher ones over them. <sup>9</sup> In addition, the produce of the land is for everyone, and the king himself takes produce from the fields.

### translationWords:

- oppress, oppression, oppressor
- just, justice, justly
- province, provincial
- marvel, wonder, amazed, astonished
- know, knowledge, make known
- power, powers
- king

### translationNotes:

- **the poor being oppressed and robbed** - AT: “people oppressing poor people and robbing them” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **just and right treatment** - The words “just” and “right” mean basically the same thing and refer to the kind of treatment that people deserve. AT: “fair treatment.” (See: [Doublet](#))
- **do not be astonished** - “do not be surprised” (UDB)
- **there are people in power** - AT: “there are people with authority” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **even higher ones over them** - There are other men who rule over the men in authority. AT: “men who have even more authority than they do” (See: [Idiom](#))
- **the produce of the land** - AT: “the food that the land produces” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to Ecclesiastes](#)

- Ecclesiastes 05 General Notes
- **Ecclesiastes 05 Translation Questions**

**Ecclesiastes 5:10-11****UDB:**

<sup>10</sup> Everyone who tries to get as much money as they can

will never think that they have enough.

They will never be satisfied with the money that they have.

That fact also makes no sense.

<sup>11</sup> The more money that people have,

the more they want to spend it.

People who have a lot of money do not benefit from it,

except to look at it and admire it.

**ULB:**

<sup>10</sup> Anyone one who loves silver will not be satisfied with silver,

and anyone who loves wealth always wants more.

This, too, is vapor.

<sup>11</sup> As prosperity increases, so also do the people who consume it.

What advantage in wealth is there to the owner

except to watch it with his eyes?

**translationWords:**

- love
- silver
- consume
- watch, watchman

**translationNotes:**

- **This, too, is vapor** - Just as a vapor has no substance, so there is no satisfaction in desiring money. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **As prosperity increases** - AT: "As a person becomes more prosperous" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

- **so also do the people who consume it** - Possible meanings are 1) “so also the person spends more money” or 2) “so also there will be more people who use his wealth.”
- **What advantage in wealth is there to the owner except to watch it with his eyes?** - AT: “The only benefit that the owner has from wealth is that he can look at it” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ecclesiastes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 05 General Notes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 05 Translation Questions](#)

**Ecclesiastes 5:12****UDB:**

<sup>12</sup> Those who work hard sleep peacefully at night,  
even if they do not have much food to eat.  
But rich people do not sleep well  
because they worry about their money.

**ULB:**

<sup>12</sup> The sleep of a working man is sweet,  
whether he eats little or a lot,  
but the wealth of a rich person does not allow him to sleep well.

**translationWords:****translationNotes:**

- **The sleep of a working man is sweet** - a man who does good or honest work can be content with himself knowing He did a good day's work regardless of his pay.
- **whether he eats little or a lot** - "whether he eats a little bit of food or a lot of food"
- **does not allow him to sleep well** - a rich person is never satisfied with his wealth. He stays awake at night being concerned about his money. AT: "keeps him awake at night"

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ecclesiastes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 05 General Notes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 05 Translation Questions](#)

**Ecclesiastes 5:13-14****UDB:**

<sup>13</sup> I have seen another terrible thing that happens here on the earth.

People save up all their money and become rich,  
but they are miserable because they store up their money.

<sup>14</sup> If something happens that causes their money to be gone,  
then when they die,  
there is no money for their children.

**ULB:**

<sup>13</sup> There is a severe evil that I have seen under the sun:

riches hoarded by the owner, resulting in his own misery.

<sup>14</sup> When the rich man loses his wealth through bad luck,  
his own son, one whom he has fathered, is left with nothing in his  
hands.

**translationWords:**

- [evil, wicked, wickedness](#)
- [hand, right hand, to hand over](#)

**translationNotes:**

- **riches hoarded by the owner** - AT: “an owner hoards riches” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **through bad luck** - Possible meanings are 1) “through misfortune” or 2) “through a bad business deal.”
- **his own son ... is left with nothing in his hands** - Here the phrase “in his hands” refers to ownership. AT: “he leaves no possession for his own son” (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Idiom](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ecclesiastes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 05 General Notes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 05 Translation Questions](#)

**Ecclesiastes 5:15-17****UDB:**

<sup>15</sup> When we are born,

we do not bring anything with us,  
and when we die,  
we take nothing with us  
from all that we have earned by working hard.

<sup>16</sup> That also seems to make no sense.

People bring nothing into the world when they are born,  
and when they leave this world they take nothing with them.  
They have worked hard,  
but they receive no lasting benefit.

<sup>17</sup> Furthermore, rich people are always miserable, sad,  
and depressed.

**ULB:**

<sup>15</sup> As a man is born naked from his mother's womb,  
so also he will leave this life naked.

He can take in his hand nothing from his work. <sup>16</sup> Another severe evil is  
that exactly as a person came, so also he must go away.  
So what profit does anyone get in working for the wind?

<sup>17</sup> During his days he eats with darkness  
and is greatly distressed with sickness and anger.

**translationWords:**

- womb
- life, live, living, alive
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- profit, profitable
- darkness
- angry, anger



**translationNotes:**

- **a man is born naked ... he will leave this life naked** - In addition to being without clothing, here the word “naked” emphasizes that people are born without any possessions. AT: “a man is naked and owns nothing when he is born ... he will leave this life the same way” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **he will leave this life** - AT: “he will die” (See: [Euphemism](#))
- **He can take in his hand nothing** - AT: “He can take nothing with him” (See: [Idiom](#))
- **as a person came, so also he must go away** - This refers to the birth and death of a person and expresses the same idea as the previous verse.
- **So what profit does anyone get in working for the wind?** - The writer uses this question to emphasize his point that there is no benefit in working for the wind. AT: “No one gets any profit in working for the wind.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **working for the wind** - Possible meanings are 1) “trying to catch the wind” or 2) “working for the air he breathes”
- **During his days he eats with darkness** - Here the word “darkness” refers to sad circumstances. Possible meanings are 1) “During his life he eats in mourning” or 2) “His life is spent in mourning” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Idiom](#))
- **and is greatly distressed with sickness and anger** - AT: “and suffers greatly, being sick and angry” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ecclesiastes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 05 General Notes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 05 Translation Questions](#)

**Ecclesiastes 5:18****UDB:**

<sup>18</sup> So the best thing for people to do here on the earth during the few years that God allows them to be alive is to eat, drink, and enjoy their work, because those are the things that he allows them to do.

**ULB:**

<sup>18</sup> Look, what I have seen to be good and suitable is to eat and drink and to enjoy the gain from all our work, as we labor under the sun during the days of this life that God has given us. For this is man's assignment.

**translationWords:**

- [good, goodness](#)
- [labor, laborer](#)
- [God](#)

**translationNotes:**

- **Look** - “pay attention” or “listen up”
- **what I have seen to be good and suitable** - Here the words “good” and “suitable” mean basically the same thing. The second intensifies the meaning of the first. AT: “what I have seen to be the best thing to do.” (See: [Doublet](#))
- **during the days of this life that God has given us** - AT: “as long as God allows us to live” (See: [Idiom](#))
- **man's assignment** - Possible meanings are 1) “man's reward” or 2) “man's lot in life.”

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ecclesiastes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 05 General Notes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 05 Translation Questions](#)

## Ecclesiastes 5:19-20

### UDB:

<sup>19</sup> If people are rich and have a lot of possessions, and are able to enjoy the things that they have and to enjoy their work, those things are also gifts from God. <sup>20</sup> Those people do not think much about everything that has happened during their lifetime, because God makes sure that they keep working at what they enjoy.

### ULB:

<sup>19</sup> Anyone to whom God has given riches and wealth and the ability to receive his share and rejoice in his work—this is a gift from God. <sup>20</sup> For he does not call to mind very often the days of his life, because God makes him keep busy with the things that he enjoys doing.

### translationWords:

- [receive](#)
- [rejoice](#)
- [gift](#)
- [mind](#)

### translationNotes:

- **riches and wealth** - These two words mean basically the same thing. They refer to money and the things that a person can buy with money. (See: [Doublet](#))
- **receive his share and rejoice in his work** - This is expressing the ability to be content and to enjoy one's work.
- **he does not call to mind** - Here the word "he" refers to the person to whom God has given a gift. AT: "he does not remember" (See: [Idiom](#))
- **the days of his life** - AT: "the things that have happened during his lifetime" (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Idiom](#))
- **keep busy** - "stay busy"

### Links:

- [Introduction to Ecclesiastes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 05 General Notes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 05 Translation Questions](#)

## **Ecclesiastes 6 General Notes**

### **Structure and formatting**

Some translations prefer to set apart extended quotations, prayers or songs. The ULB and many other English translations indent the lines of 6:7-11, which is an extended quotation. Some lines are indented twice to further set them apart.

### **Special concepts in this chapter**

#### **Satisfaction**

While a person may be given a great many things, they are worthless and provide no sense of satisfaction or peace. It is assumed that only Yahweh can provide these things to man. Solomon is depressed that he had everything he could have ever wanted in life, but they were not enough to give him satisfaction or peace. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### **Links:**

- [Ecclesiastes 06:01 Notes](#)

## Ecclesiastes 6:1-2

### UDB:

<sup>1</sup> I have seen something else here on this earth that troubles people. <sup>2</sup> God enables some people to receive a lot of money and possessions and to be honored by him. They have everything that they want. But God sometimes does not allow them to enjoy those things. Someone else gets them and enjoys them. That seems senseless and unfair.

### ULB:

6 <sup>1</sup> There is an evil that I have seen under the sun, and it is severe for men. <sup>2</sup> God might give riches, wealth, and honor to a man so that he lacks nothing that he desires for himself, but then God gives him no ability to enjoy it. Instead, someone else uses his things. This is vapor, an evil affliction.

### translationWords:

- [evil, wicked, wickedness](#)
- [God](#)
- [honor, to honor](#)
- [afflict, affliction](#)

### translationNotes:

- **it is severe for men** - AT: “it causes hardship for people”
- **riches, wealth** - These two words mean basically the same thing. They refer to money and the things that a person can buy with money. (See: [Doublet](#))
- **he lacks nothing** - AT: “he has everything”
- **God gives him no ability to enjoy it.** - To acquire riches or possessions and not be able to enjoy them is futile.
- **This is vapor, an evil affliction.** - To be unable to enjoy one’s possessions is an evil affliction or curse.

### Links:

- [Introduction to Ecclesiastes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 06 General Notes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 06 Translation Questions](#)

## Ecclesiastes 6:3-4

### UDB:

<sup>3</sup> Someone might have a hundred children and live for many years. But if he is not able to enjoy the things that he has acquired, and if he is not buried properly after he dies, I say that a child that is dead when it is born is more fortunate. <sup>4</sup> This is true, even though that dead baby's birth is meaningless—even though it does not have a name, and its brief life becomes only a sad memory in the future.

### ULB:

<sup>3</sup> If a man fathers a hundred children and lives many years, so that the days of his years are many, but if his heart is not satisfied with good and he is not buried with honor, then I say that a baby that is born dead is better off than he is. <sup>4</sup> Even such a baby is born in futility and passes away in darkness, and its name remains hidden.

### translationWords:

- heart
- good, goodness
- bury, buried, burial
- death, die, dead
- darkness

### translationNotes:

- **fathers a hundred children** - AT: “fathers 100 children” (See: **Numbers** and **Hypothetical Situations** and **Hyperbole**)
- **lives many years, so that the days of his years are many** - These two phrases mean basically the same thing and are combined for emphasis. (See: **Parallelism**)
- **his heart is not satisfied with good** - AT: “he is not content with good things” (See: **Synecdoche** and **Idiom**)
- **he is not buried with honor** - Possible meanings are 1) “no one buries him” or 2) “no one buries him properly.” (See: **Active or Passive**)
- **such a baby is born in futility** - AT: “such a baby is born for nothing”
- **passes away in darkness** - Here the word “darkness” may refer either to the world of the dead or to something that is difficult to understand. AT: “dies unexplainably” (See: **Euphemism** and **Idiom**)
- **its name remains hidden** - AT: “no one knows its name” (See: **Idiom**)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ecclesiastes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 06 General Notes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 06 Translation Questions](#)

## Ecclesiastes 6:5-6

### UDB:

<sup>5</sup> That baby does not live to see the sun or know anything. But even so, it finds more rest than rich people do who are alive. <sup>6</sup> Even if people should live for two thousand years, if they do not enjoy the things that God gives to them, it would have been better for them never to have been born.

All people who live a long time certainly all go to the same place—to the grave.

### ULB:

<sup>5</sup> Although this child does not see the sun or know anything, it has rest even though that man did not. <sup>6</sup> Even if a man should live for two thousand years but does not learn to enjoy good things, he goes to the same place as everyone else.

### translationWords:

- know, knowledge, make known
- rest

### translationNotes:

- **it has rest even though that man did not** - A still born child never experienced hardship, it remained at rest. Whereas the man who lived many years without satisfaction lacks rest.
- **Even if a man should live for two thousand years** - This is an exaggeration to show that it does not matter how long a person lives if he does not enjoy the good things in life. (See: [Hypothetical Situations](#) and [Hyperbole](#))
- **two thousand years** - AT: “2,000 years” (See: [Numbers](#))
- **but does not learn to enjoy good things** - This is the point, that man needs to learn to enjoy the good things life offers him.

### Links:

- [Introduction to Ecclesiastes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 06 General Notes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 06 Translation Questions](#)



**Ecclesiastes 6:7-8****UDB:**

<sup>7</sup> People work hard to earn enough money to buy food to eat,  
but often they never get enough to eat.

<sup>8</sup> So it seems that wise people do not receive more lasting benefits  
than foolish people do.

And it seems that poor people do not benefit from knowing how to conduct  
their lives.

**ULB:**

<sup>7</sup> Though all a man's work is to fill his mouth,  
yet his appetite is not filled.

<sup>8</sup> Indeed, what advantage has the wise person over the fool?  
What advantage does the poor man have  
even if he knows how to act in front of other people?

**translationWords:**

- wise, wisdom
- fool, foolish, folly

**translationNotes:**

- **to fill his mouth** - AT: "to put food in his mouth" or "to eat" (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **his appetite is not filled** - AT: "he does not satisfy his appetite" (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **what advantage has the wise person over the fool?** - A wise person's wisdom does not entitle him to any additional comforts. AT: "the wise person has no advantage over the fool." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **What advantage does the poor man have even if he knows how to act in front of other people?** - AT: "The poor man has no advantage even if he knows how to act in front of other people." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ecclesiastes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 06 General Notes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 06 Translation Questions](#)

**Ecclesiastes 6:9-10****UDB:**

<sup>9</sup> It is better to enjoy the things that we already have  
 than to constantly want more things.  
 Continually wanting more things is senseless,  
 like trying to control the wind.

<sup>10</sup> All the things that exist on the earth have been given names.  
 Everyone knows what people are like,  
 so it is useless to argue with God,  
 who is stronger than we are.

**ULB:**

<sup>9</sup> It is better to be satisfied with what the eyes see  
 than to desire what a wandering appetite craves,  
 which is also vapor and an attempt to shepherd the wind.

<sup>10</sup> Whatever has existed has already been given its name, and what mankind  
 is like has already been known. So it has become useless to dispute with the  
 one who is the mighty judge of all.

**translationWords:**

- shepherd, to shepherd
- mighty, might
- judge

**translationNotes:**

- **what the eyes see** - A person can see these things because he already has them. AT: “what a person has” (See: **Metonymy**)
- **to desire what a wandering appetite craves** - This refers to things that a person wants but does not have. AT: “to want what he does not have” (See: **Metonymy**)
- **vapor and an attempt to shepherd the wind** - See how you translated this in **1:14**.
- **Whatever has existed has already been given its name** - AT: “People have already named everything that exists” (See: **Active or Passive**)
- **what mankind is like has already been known** - AT: people already know what mankind is like” (See: **Active or Passive**)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ecclesiastes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 06 General Notes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 06 Translation Questions](#)

**Ecclesiastes 6:11-12****UDB:**

<sup>11</sup> The more that we talk,

the more often we say things that are senseless,  
so it certainly does not benefit us to talk a lot.

<sup>12</sup> No human being can know everything that is good for himself in this life. People live for a few seemingly meaningless days. Life passes by quickly, like a shadow, and no one know what is coming after we die. We live for only a short time, and then we disappear like a vapor.

**ULB:**

<sup>11</sup> The more words that are spoken, the more futility increases,  
so what advantage is that to a man? <sup>12</sup> For who knows what is good for man in his life during his futile, numbered days through which he passes like a shadow? Who can tell a man what will come under the sun after he passes?

**translationWords:**

- good, goodness
- shadow

**translationNotes:**

- **The more words that are spoken** - AT: “The more words that people speak” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **the more futility increases** - when there is much talk, the chances for idle, non-encouraging words to be spoken is greater than if only a few words are spoken. AT: “the more meaningless those words are”
- **what advantage is that to a man?** - There is no advantage for a man to talk a lot. AT: “that is no advantage to a man.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **For who knows what is good for man ... he passes like a shadow?** - AT: “No one knows what is good for man ... he passes like a shadow.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **numbered days through which he passes like a shadow** - Life is compared to a shadow that passes quickly. (See: [Simile](#))
- **Who can tell a man what will come under the sun after he passes?** - AT: “No one can tell a man what will come under the sun after he passes.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **what will come under the sun** - This is another way of expressing what will happen in the future. AT: “what will happen on earth” (See: [Metonymy](#))

- **after he passes** - This is a polite expression for death. AT: “after he dies” (See: [Euphemism](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ecclesiastes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 06 General Notes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 06 Translation Questions](#)

## **Ecclesiastes 7 General Notes**

### **Structure and formatting**

Some translations prefer to set apart extended quotations, prayers or songs. The ULB and many other English translations indent the lines of chapter 7, which is an extended quotation. Some lines are indented twice to further set them apart.

### **Special concepts in this chapter**

#### **Advice**

This chapter gives a series of disconnected pieces of advice. Translators should not try to smooth the transitions between these pieces of advice. The advice in these statements do not apply in every situation. Therefore, they should be seen as “good ideas.”

#### **Links:**

- [Ecclesiastes 07:01 Notes](#)

**Ecclesiastes 7:1-2****UDB:**

<sup>1</sup> It is better that other people honor us than to have fine perfume.

The day that we die is better than the day that we are born.

<sup>2</sup> It is better to go to a house where people are mourning about someone who has died

than to go to a house where people are feasting,  
because everyone will die some day,  
and people should think about when they will die.

**ULB:**

<sup>1</sup> A good name is better than costly perfume,  
and the day of death is better than the day of birth.

<sup>2</sup> It is better to go to a house of mourning  
than to a house of feasting,  
for mourning comes to all people at the end of life,  
so living people must take this to heart.

**translationWords:**

- good, goodness
- name
- death, die, dead
- house
- mourn, mourning
- feast
- life, live, living, alive
- heart

**translationNotes:**

- **A good name** - AT: "A good reputation" (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **living people must take this to heart** - They need to consider what kind of name or reputation that they have and will leave behind when they die. AT: "those who are alive must think seriously about this."

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ecclesiastes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 07 General Notes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 07 Translation Questions](#)



**Ecclesiastes 7:3-4****UDB:**

<sup>3</sup> It is better to be sad than to be always laughing,

because when we are sad, we can think better about the things that will make us wise and happy.

<sup>4</sup> Wise people go to where others are mourning to comfort them,

but foolish people only search for those who are laughing.

**ULB:**

<sup>3</sup> Grief is better than laughter,

for after sadness of face comes gladness of heart.

<sup>4</sup> The heart of the wise is in the house of mourning,

but the heart of fools is in the house of feasting.

**translationWords:**

- face
- wise, wisdom
- fool, foolish, folly

**translationNotes:**

- **sadness of face** - This refers to being sad. AT: “an experience that makes a person sad” (See: [Idiom](#))
- **gladness of heart** - Here the word “heart” refers to a person’s thoughts and emotions. Gladness describes the state of the emotions of being happy and peaceful. AT: “right thinking” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **The heart of the wise is in the house of mourning** - AT: “Wise people think deeply about death” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **but the heart of fools is in the house of feasting** - AT: “but foolish people think only about enjoying themselves” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **the house of mourning ... the house of feasting** - These phrases refer to what happens in these places.

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ecclesiastes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 07 General Notes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 07 Translation Questions](#)

**Ecclesiastes 7:5-6****UDB:**

<sup>5</sup> It is better to pay attention to someone who is rebuking you  
 than to listen to the songs of a foolish person.

<sup>6</sup> By listening to foolish people laughing  
 we will not learn anymore than by listening to the crackling of  
 thorns being burned under a pot.  
 Listening to fools is senseless.

**ULB:**

<sup>5</sup> It is better to listen to the rebuke of the wise  
 than to listen to the song of fools.

<sup>6</sup> For like the crackling of thorns burning under a pot,  
 so also is the laughter of fools.

This, too, is vapor.

**translationWords:**

- [rebuke](#)
- [thorn, thistle](#)

**translationNotes:**

- **to the rebuke of the wise** - AT: “when wise people rebuke you” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))
- **to listen to the song of fools** - AT: “to listen to fools sing”
- **like the crackling of thorns burning under a pot, so also is the laughter of fools** - The “laughter of fools” is compared to burning thorns that are loud but quickly burn out. (See: [Simile](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ecclesiastes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 07 General Notes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 07 Translation Questions](#)

**Ecclesiastes 7:7****UDB:**

<sup>7</sup> When wise people say to others, “You must pay me a lot of money for me to protect you,”  
that causes those wise people to become foolish.  
Those who accept bribes become unable to do what is right.

**ULB:**

<sup>7</sup> Extortion certainly makes a wise man foolish,  
and a bribe corrupts the heart.

**translationWords:**

- [bribe](#)
- [corrupt, corruption](#)
- [heart](#)

**translationNotes:**

- **Extortion** - This refers to forcing someone to give money or other valuable items to another so that the other person does not harm him. It is considered wrong.
- **makes a wise man foolish** - Possible meanings are 1) “turns the wise man into a foolish man” or 2) “makes the advice of the wise man appear to be foolish advice.”
- **corrupts the heart** - Here the word “heart” refers to the mind. AT: “ruins a person’s ability to think and judge rightly” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ecclesiastes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 07 General Notes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 07 Translation Questions](#)

**Ecclesiastes 7:8-9****UDB:**

<sup>8</sup> Finishing something is better than starting something,

and being patient is better than being proud.

<sup>9</sup> Do not quickly lose your temper,

because it is foolish people who become very angry.

**ULB:**

<sup>8</sup> Better is the end of a matter than the beginning;

and the people patient in spirit are better than the proud in spirit.

<sup>9</sup> Do not be quick to anger in your spirit,

for anger resides in the hearts of fools.

**translationWords:**

- patient, patience
- spirit, spiritual
- proud, pride, prideful
- angry, anger
- fool, foolish, folly

**translationNotes:**

- **the people patient in spirit are better than the proud in spirit** - Here the word “spirit” refers to a person’s attitude. AT: “patient people are better than proud people” or “a patient attitude is better than a prideful attitude” (See: **Metonymy**)
- **Do not be quick to anger in your spirit** - AT: “Do not become angry quickly” or “Do not have a bad temper” (See: **Metonymy**)
- **anger resides in the hearts of fools** - Anger is compared to something that lives inside of foolish people. AT: “foolish people are full of anger” (See: **Metaphor**)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ecclesiastes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 07 General Notes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 07 Translation Questions](#)

**Ecclesiastes 7:10****UDB:**

<sup>10</sup> Do not say, “Things were a lot better previously,”  
because it is only foolish people who say that.

**ULB:**

<sup>10</sup> Do not say, “Why were the days of old better than these?”  
For it is not because of wisdom that you ask this question.

**translationWords:**

- [wise, wisdom](#)

**translationNotes:**

- **Why were the days of old better than these?** - The person asks this question in order to complain about the present time. AT: “Things were better in the past than they are now” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **it is not because of wisdom that you ask this question** - The person making this statement is not comparing the present and past logically, but subjectively. AT: “if you were wise you would not ask this question” or “asking this question shows that you are not wise”

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ecclesiastes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 07 General Notes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 07 Translation Questions](#)

**Ecclesiastes 7:11-12****UDB:**

<sup>11</sup> Being wise is like inheriting valuable things.

There are lasting benefits for anyone on earth who is wise.

<sup>12</sup> We are sometimes protected by being wise,

as we are sometimes protected by having a lot of money.

However, being wise is better than having a lot of money,

because being wise prevents us from doing foolish things that would cause us to die.

**ULB:**

<sup>11</sup> Wisdom is as good as valuable things we inherit from our ancestors.

It provides benefits for those who see the sun.

<sup>12</sup> For wisdom provides protection as money can provide protection,

but the advantage of knowledge is that wisdom gives life to whoever has it.

**translationWords:**

- good, goodness
- inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir
- know, knowledge, make known
- life, live, living, alive

**translationNotes:**

- **those who see the sun** - AT: “those who are alive” (See: **Idiom**)
- **the advantage of knowledge is that wisdom gives life** - Possible meanings are 1) that the writer uses the words “knowledge” and “wisdom” to mean the same thing, or 2) “the advantage of knowing wisdom is that it gives life.”
- **gives life to whoever has it** - “it” refers to wisdom. Knowledge and wisdom “gives life” in different ways. Choosing good investments, making good friends, choosing healthy life styles, living at peace with others are just some ways of how wisdom “gives life”.



**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ecclesiastes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 07 General Notes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 07 Translation Questions](#)

**Ecclesiastes 7:13****UDB:**

<sup>13</sup> Think carefully about what God has done.

Certainly no one can cause to become straight  
the things that God has caused to be crooked.

**ULB:**

<sup>13</sup> Consider the deeds of God:

Who can straighten out anything he has made crooked?

**translationWords:**

- works, deeds, work, acts
- God

**translationNotes:**

- **Who can straighten out anything he has made crooked?** - AT: “No one can straighten out anything he has made crooked.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ecclesiastes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 07 General Notes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 07 Translation Questions](#)

**Ecclesiastes 7:14****UDB:**

<sup>14</sup> When things are going well for you, be happy,  
 and when things are not going well for you,  
 remember that God is the one who causes good things to happen  
 and who also causes disasters.  
 Yet God does not reveal to anyone exactly what his future holds.

**ULB:**

<sup>14</sup> When times are good, live happily in that good,  
 but when times are bad, consider this:  
 God has allowed both to exist side by side.  
 For this reason, no one will find out anything that is coming after  
 him.

**translationWords:****translationNotes:**

- **When times are good ... when times are bad** - “When good things happen ... when bad things happen” (See: **Idiom**)
- **live happily in that good** - “be happy about those good things”
- **side by side** - “at the same time” (See: **Idiom**)
- **anything that is coming after him** - Possible meanings are 1) “anything that happens in the future” or 2) “anything that happens in the world after he dies” or 3) “anything that happens to him after he dies.”

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ecclesiastes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 07 General Notes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 07 Translation Questions](#)

**Ecclesiastes 7:15-16****UDB:**

<sup>15</sup> During all the time that I have been alive I have seen many things that seem senseless.

I have seen righteous people die while they were still young,  
and I have seen wicked people remain alive for a very long time  
in spite of their continuing to be wicked.

<sup>16</sup> So do not think that you are very righteous,  
and do not think that you are very wise,  
because if you think those things, you will destroy yourself.

**ULB:**

<sup>15</sup> I have seen many things in my meaningless days.

There are righteous people who perish in spite of their righteousness,  
and there are wicked people who live a long life in spite of their evil.

<sup>16</sup> Do not be self-righteous,  
wise in your own eyes.

Why should you destroy yourself?

**translationWords:**

- righteous, righteousness
- perish, perishing, perishable
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- wise, wisdom

**translationNotes:**

- **in spite of their righteousness** - “even though they are righteous”
- **self-righteous, wise in your own eyes** - These two phrases mean basically the same thing and are combined for emphasis. (See: **Parallelism**)
- **Do not be self-righteous** - “Do not think that you are more righteous than you actually are”
- **wise in your own eyes** - AT: “wise in your own opinion” (See: **Metonymy**)
- **Why should you destroy yourself?** - The writer uses this question to emphasize that being self-righteous destroys a person. AT: “There is no reason to destroy yourself.” (See: **Rhetorical Question**)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ecclesiastes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 07 General Notes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 07 Translation Questions](#)

**Ecclesiastes 7:17-18****UDB:**

<sup>17</sup> If you do what is evil or do what is foolish,

you might die while you are still young.

<sup>18</sup> Continue to try to become wise and do what is right.

Both of those things are found in the person who always respects God.

**ULB:**

<sup>17</sup> Do not be too wicked or foolish.

Why should you die before your time?

<sup>18</sup> It is good that you should take hold of this wisdom,

and that you should not let go of righteousness.

For the person who fears God will meet all his obligations. [1]Instead of *will meet all his obligations*, some modern versions have different interpretations of this difficult passage.

**translationWords:**

- fool, foolish, folly
- hand, right hand, to hand over
- fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh
- God

**translationNotes:**

- **Why should you die before your time?** - “There is no reason for you to die sooner than you should.” (See: **Rhetorical Question**)
- **take hold of this wisdom** - “commit yourself to this wisdom” (See: **Idiom**)
- **you should not let go of righteousness** - “you should not stop trying to be righteous” or “you should keep trying to be righteous” (See: **Metonymy**)
- **will meet all his obligations** - “will do everything that God expects of him.”

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ecclesiastes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 07 General Notes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 07 Translation Questions](#)

**Ecclesiastes 7:19-20****UDB:**

<sup>19</sup> If you are wise, you will be more powerful

than the ten most powerful men in your city.

<sup>20</sup> There is no one in this world who always does what is right,  
who never sins.

**ULB:**

<sup>19</sup> Wisdom is powerful in the wise man,  
more than ten rulers in a city.

<sup>20</sup> There is not a righteous man on earth  
who does good and never sins.

**translationWords:**

- [power, powers](#)
- [ruler, rulers, rule](#)
- [earth, earthly](#)
- [good, goodness](#)
- [sin, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)

**translationNotes:**

- **more than ten rulers in a city** - Wisdom is being compared to many city rulers. Wisdom can make a person more important than many city rulers.
- **does good and never sins** - AT: “does good works and does not sin”

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ecclesiastes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 07 General Notes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 07 Translation Questions](#)



**Ecclesiastes 7:21-22****UDB:**

<sup>21</sup> Do not pay attention to everything that people say,

because if you do that, you might hear your servant curse you.

<sup>22</sup> After all, you yourself know very well that you have also cursed other people.

**ULB:**

<sup>21</sup> Do not listen to every word that is spoken,

because you might hear your servant curse you.

<sup>22</sup> Similarly, you know yourself that in your own heart  
you have often cursed others.

**translationWords:**

- [word](#)
- [servant, slave, slavery](#)
- [curse, cursed](#)
- [heart](#)

**translationNotes:**

- **every word that is spoken** - AT: “everything that people say” (UDB) (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **you know yourself** - “you yourself know.” Here “yourself” is used to emphasize that “you know.” (See: [Reflexive Pronouns](#))
- **in your own heart** - AT: “in your own thoughts” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ecclesiastes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 07 General Notes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 07 Translation Questions](#)

**Ecclesiastes 7:23-25****UDB:**

<sup>23</sup> I said to myself that I would use my wisdom to study all the things that I have written about,  
but I was not able to do it.

<sup>24</sup> Wisdom seems to be far from me.

There is no one who can truly understand everything.

<sup>25</sup> But I decided to investigate things and

by my wisdom try to understand the reason for everything.

I also wanted to understand why people act wickedly

and why they act very foolishly.

**ULB:**

<sup>23</sup> All this have I proven by wisdom. I said,

“I will be wise,”

but it was more than I could be.

<sup>24</sup> Wisdom is far off and very deep.

Who can find it?

<sup>25</sup> I turned my heart to learn and examine

and seek wisdom and the explanations of reality,

and to understand that evil is stupid

and that folly is madness.

**translationWords:**

- wise, wisdom
- understand, understanding
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- fool, foolish, folly

**translationNotes:**

- **All this have I proven** - “All this that I have already wrote about have I proven” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **it was more than I could be** - “it was beyond my ability to understand”
- **far off and very deep** - Wisdom was difficult to grasp. When there was understanding, it was very limited. It required deeper insight than the author was able to gain. AT: “difficult to understand” (See: [Idiom](#))
- **Who can find it?** - The writer uses this question to emphasize the difficulty in understanding wisdom. AT: “No one can understand it.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **I turned my heart** - Here the word “heart” refers to the mind. AT: “I turned my thoughts” or “I determined” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ecclesiastes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 07 General Notes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 07 Translation Questions](#)

**Ecclesiastes 7:26****UDB:**

<sup>26</sup> One thing I learned was that allowing a woman to seduce you is worse than dying.

A woman who tries to seduce men is as dangerous as a trap.

If you allow her to put her arms around you, it will be as though she is fastening you with chains.

Women like that will capture sinful men,

but men who please God will escape from such women.

**ULB:**

<sup>26</sup> I found that more bitter than death is any woman

whose heart is full of snares and nets,

and whose hands are chains.

Whoever pleases God will escape from her,

but the sinner will be taken by her.

**translationWords:**

- death, die, dead
- snare, trap
- God
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning

**translationNotes:**

- **any woman whose heart is full of snares and nets, and whose hands are chains** - The writer says that the seductive woman is like traps that hunters use to catch animals. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **whose heart is full of snares and nets** - Here the word “heart” refers to the thoughts and emotions. This is a woman who is only interested in self gain. AT: “who wants to trap someone” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **snares and nets** - These two words both refer to ways in which people trap animals. She continually thinks of ways to trap men into having to give her things. (See: [Doublet](#))
- **whose hands are chains** - Here the word “hands” refers to power or control. AT: “from whom no one can escape” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **the sinner will be taken by her** - AT: “she will capture the sinner” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ecclesiastes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 07 General Notes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 07 Translation Questions](#)

## Ecclesiastes 7:27-28

### UDB:

<sup>27</sup> This is what I have learned. I tried to learn more and more about things to try to find out the reason for everything, <sup>28</sup> and I continued to try to learn more, but I could not find all that I was searching for. But one thing that I found out was that among one thousand people I found one righteous man, but I did not find even one righteous woman.

### ULB:

<sup>27</sup> “Consider what I have discovered,” says the Teacher. “I have been adding one discovery to another in order to find an explanation of reality. <sup>28</sup> This is what I am still looking for, but I have not found it. I did find one righteous man among a thousand, but a woman among all those I did not find.

### translationWords:

- [teacher, Teacher](#)
- [righteous, righteousness](#)

### translationNotes:

- **adding one discovery to another** - AT: “discovering one thing after another” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#) and [Idiom](#))
- **in order to find an explanation of reality** - AT: “in order to be able to explain life” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))
- **one righteous man among a thousand** - Only one righteous man was found in a group of 1,000 men. AT: “1 righteous man among 1,000” (See: [Numbers](#))
- **a woman among all those** - There were no righteous women found in a group of 1,000 women.

### Links:

- [Introduction to Ecclesiastes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 07 General Notes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 07 Translation Questions](#)

**Ecclesiastes 7:29****UDB:**

<sup>29</sup> I have learned only this: that when God created people, they were righteous, but they have found many ways to complicate their own lives.

**ULB:**

<sup>29</sup> I have discovered only this: that God created humanity upright, but they have gone away looking for many difficulties.”

**translationWords:**

- [create, creation, Creator](#)
- [upright, uprightness](#)

**translationNotes:**

- **they have gone away looking for many difficulties** - Possible meanings are 1) “they have made many sinful plans” or 2) “they have made their own lives difficult.”
- **they have gone away** - Here the word “they” refers to “humanity.”

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ecclesiastes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 07 General Notes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 07 Translation Questions](#)

## **Ecclesiastes 8 General Notes**

### **Structure and formatting**

Some translations prefer to set apart extended quotations, prayers or songs. The ULB and many other English translations indent the lines of chapter 8, which is an extended quotation. Some lines are indented twice to further set them apart.

### **Special concepts in this chapter**

#### **Wisdom**

Solomon, known for his wisdom, gives a detailed description of wisdom. True wisdom is seeking to honor God. This is the only thing that lasts. (See: [wise](#), [wisdom](#))

#### **Links:**

- [Ecclesiastes 08:01 Notes](#)



**Ecclesiastes 8:1****UDB:**

<sup>1</sup> I will tell you about those who are truly wise,  
     with the result that they can explain why everything happens.  
 Being wise enables people to be happy  
     and enables them to smile.

**ULB:**

8

<sup>1</sup> Who is a wise man?  
     Who knows what the events in life mean?  
 Wisdom in a man causes his face to shine,  
     and the hardness of his face is changed.

**translationWords:**

- [wise, wisdom](#)
- [life, live, living, alive](#)

**translationNotes:**

- **Who is a wise man? Who knows what the events in life mean?** - The writer asks these as leading questions to provide the answer in what he says next.
- **causes his face to shine** - This means that the person's face will show that he has wisdom. AT: "shows on his face" (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **the hardness of his face** - AT: "his harsh appearance" (See: [Idiom](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ecclesiastes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 08 General Notes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 08 Translation Questions](#)

## Ecclesiastes 8:2-4

### UDB:

<sup>2</sup> You solemnly promised God that you would obey what the king commands, so do that. <sup>3</sup> Do not do anything rashly when it concerns the king. And do not join with those who want to rebel against him, because the king will do what he wants to do. <sup>4</sup> We need to obey what the king says more than we need to obey what anyone else says, for no one can say to the king, “Why are you doing that?”

### ULB:

<sup>2</sup> I advise you to obey the king’s command because of God’s oath to protect him. <sup>3</sup> Do not hurry out of his presence, and do not stand in support of something wrong, for the king does whatever he desires. <sup>4</sup> The king’s word rules, so who will say to him, “What are you doing?”

### translationWords:

- [counsel, counselor, advice, advisor](#)
- [obey, obedient, obedience](#)
- [king](#)
- [command, to command, commandment](#)
- [God](#)
- [oath, swear, swear by](#)
- [word](#)
- [ruler, rulers, rule](#)

### translationNotes:

- **God’s oath to protect him** - “the oath you made before God to protect him”
- **Do not hurry out of his presence** - Possible meanings are 1) do not be hasty to physically leave his presence or 2) to remain loyal to the King, do not hastily abandon him for another.
- **The king’s word rules** - AT: “What the king says is the law” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **who will say to him** - AT: “no one can say to him” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **What are you doing?** - AT: “You should not be doing what you are doing.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to Ecclesiastes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 08 General Notes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 08 Translation Questions](#)

**Ecclesiastes 8:5-7****UDB:**

<sup>5</sup> If you obey what the king commands,

he will not harm you.

So be wise, and know the correct time to do things and the right way to do them.

<sup>6</sup> Although people experience many troubles,

there is a right way to do them and a right time to do them.

<sup>7</sup> No one knows what will happen in the future,

so there is no one who can tell him what is going to happen.

**ULB:**

<sup>5</sup> Whoever keeps the king's commands avoids harm.

A wise man's heart recognizes the proper course and time of action.

<sup>6</sup> For every matter there is a correct response and a time to respond,

because the troubles of man are great.

<sup>7</sup> No one knows what is coming next.

Who can tell him what is coming?

**translationWords:**

- heart
- trouble, troubles, troubled

**translationNotes:**

- **A wise man's heart recognizes** - the "heart" refers to thoughts. AT: "A wise man recognizes" (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **Who can tell him what is coming?** - This question emphasizes that no one know what will happen in the future. AT: "No one can tell him what is coming." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ecclesiastes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 08 General Notes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 08 Translation Questions](#)

**Ecclesiastes 8:8-9****UDB:**

<sup>8</sup> We cannot control our breathing,

and we cannot control when we will stop breathing and die.

Soldiers are not permitted to go home during a battle,

and evil people will not be saved by doing what is evil.

<sup>9</sup> I thought about all those things, and I thought about all the other things that happen on this earth. I saw that sometimes people are able to do severe harm to others.

**ULB:**

<sup>8</sup> No one is ruler over his breath so as to stop the breath,[1]Some versions have *No one is ruler over the wind so as to stop the wind* .

and no one has power over the day of his death.

No one is discharged from the army during a battle,

and wickedness will not rescue those who are its slaves.

<sup>9</sup> I have realized all this; I have applied my heart to every kind of work that is done under the sun. There is a time when a person oppresses another person to that person's hurt.[2]Some modern versions have *to his own hurt* . The Hebrew passage can be interpreted either way.

**translationWords:**

- breathe, breath
- power, powers
- death, die, dead
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- servant, slave, slavery

**translationNotes:**

- **No one is ruler over his breath so as to stop the breath ... no one has power over the day of his death** - Just as no one has the ability to stop himself from breathing, no one can continue living when it is time to die. (See: **Simile**)
- **wickedness will not rescue those who are its slaves** - The writer speaks of wickedness as if it were a master who had slaves. (See: **Personification**)
- **applied my heart** - See how you translated this in **1:17**.

- **every kind of work that is done** - AT: “every kind of work that people do” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ecclesiastes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 08 General Notes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 08 Translation Questions](#)

**Ecclesiastes 8:10-11****UDB:**

<sup>10</sup> I also saw that sometimes after evil people die, they are highly honored at their funerals by the people in the cities where they had done evil deeds. It was difficult to understand why that happens.

<sup>11</sup> If evil people are not immediately punished, it causes other people to also want to do evil things.

**ULB:**

<sup>10</sup> So I saw the wicked buried publicly. They were taken from the holy area and buried and were praised by people in the city where they had done their wicked deeds. This also is uselessness.[1]Some modern versions have other interpretations of this difficult verse: *I saw wicked people come and go into the holy place. They proudly spoke in the city about the things they had done. This also is uselessness.* Other versions have *I saw wicked people come and go into the holy place. They were praised in the city for the things they had done. This also is uselessness.* <sup>11</sup> When a sentence against an evil crime is not executed quickly, it entices the hearts of human beings to do evil.

**translationWords:**

- bury, buried, burial
- holy, holiness
- praise
- works, deeds, work, acts
- crime, criminal

**translationNotes:**

- **the wicked buried publicly** - Evil people that died were given honorable burials. Implied was that their bodies should have been thrown onto the city refuse heap or such. AT: “people bury the wicked publicly” (See: **Active or Passive**)
- **They were taken from the holy area and buried and were praised by people** - AT: “People took them from the holy area and buried them and praised them” (See: **Active or Passive**)
- **When a sentence against an evil crime is not executed quickly** - AT: “When people in authority do not quickly execute a sentence against an evil crime” (See: **Active or Passive**)
- **entices the hearts of human beings** - Here the word “heart” refers to the will. AT: “entices human beings” (See: **Synecdoche**)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ecclesiastes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 08 General Notes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 08 Translation Questions](#)



## Ecclesiastes 8:12-13

### UDB:

<sup>12</sup> But even if sinful people commit a hundred crimes, and even if they live for a long time, I know that things will go better for those who honor and revere God. <sup>13</sup> I also know that things will not go well for those who are evil, because they do not honor God. Shadows do not last a long time. Similarly, evil people will not live a long time.

### ULB:

<sup>12</sup> Even if a sinner does evil a hundred times and still lives for a long time, yet I know that it will be well with those who respect God, who honor his presence with them. <sup>13</sup> But it will not go well for a wicked man; his life will not be prolonged. His days are like a fleeting shadow because he does not honor God.

### translationWords:

- [sin, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)
- [God](#)
- [honor, to honor](#)
- [evil, wicked, wickedness](#)
- [shadow](#)

### translationNotes:

- **a hundred times** - AT: "100 times" (See: [Numbers](#))
- **it will be well with those who respect God** - AT: "life will go well for those who respect God" (See: [Idiom](#))
- **who respect God, who honor his presence** - These two phrases mean basically the same thing and are combined for emphasis. (See: [Parallelism](#))
- **his life will not be prolonged** - AT: "God will not prolong his life" (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **His days are like a fleeting shadow** - Possible meanings are 1) the writer compares the length of the wicked person's life to a shadow that passes quickly or 2) the quality or enjoyment of life is fleeting to a wicked person, there is no substance to his life. (See: [Simile](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to Ecclesiastes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 08 General Notes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 08 Translation Questions](#)

## Ecclesiastes 8:14-15

### UDB:

<sup>14</sup> Another thing that sometimes happens on this earth is that bad things happen to righteous people, and good things happen to evil people. It is difficult to understand why that happens. <sup>15</sup> So I decided that I would recommend that people be happy while they are alive, because the best thing that people can do here on this earth is to eat and drink and be happy. Enjoying those things will help people while they do their work, all the days that God has given to them to remain alive here on the earth.

### ULB:

<sup>14</sup> There is another useless vapor—something else that is done on the earth. Things happen to righteous people as they happen to wicked people, and things happen to wicked people as they happen to righteous people. I say that this also is useless vapor. <sup>15</sup> So I recommend happiness, because a man has no better thing under the sun than to eat and drink and to be happy. It is happiness that will accompany him in his labor for all the days of his life that God has given him under the sun.

### translationWords:

- [earth, earthly](#)
- [righteous, righteousness](#)
- [labor, laborer](#)

### translationNotes:

- **useless vapor** - “meaningless” or “futility”. Things that happen but should not. Such as good things happening to wicked people and bad things happening to good people.
- **something else that is done on the earth** - AT: “something else that people do on the earth” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **for all the days of his life that God has given him** - AT: “for as long as God allows him to live” (See: [Idiom](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to Ecclesiastes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 08 General Notes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 08 Translation Questions](#)

**Ecclesiastes 8:16-17****UDB:**

<sup>16</sup> I thought about being wise and about people who work very hard on this earth, working day and night and not taking time to sleep. <sup>17</sup> Then I thought about everything that God has done, and I realized that no one can understand everything that happens here on this earth. Truly, people are not able to fully understand everything that God does, even if they try hard to do that. Even if wise people claim that they understand it all, they cannot.

**ULB:**

<sup>16</sup> When I applied my heart to know wisdom and to understand the work that is done on the earth, work often done without sleep for the eyes at night or in the day, <sup>17</sup> then I considered all of God's deeds, and that man cannot understand the work that is done under the sun. No matter how much a man labors to find the answers, he will not find them. Even though a wise man might believe he knows, he really does not.

**translationWords:**

- [heart](#)
- [know, knowledge, make known](#)
- [wise, wisdom](#)
- [understand, understanding](#)
- [works, deeds, work, acts](#)
- [believe, believe in, belief](#)

**translationNotes:**

- **applied my heart** - to apply one's mind and understanding towards figuring out something. See how you translated this in [1:17](#).
- **the work that is done on the earth** - AT: "the work that people do on the earth" (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **without sleep for the eyes** - AT: "without sleeping" (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Abstract Nouns](#))
- **the work that is done under the sun** - Possible meanings are 1) "the work that God does under the sun" or 2) "the work that God allows people to do under the sun." (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ecclesiastes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 08 General Notes](#)

- Ecclesiastes 08 Translation Questions

## **Ecclesiastes 9 General Notes**

### **Structure and formatting**

Some translations prefer to set apart extended quotations, prayers or songs. The ULB and many other English translations indent the lines of chapter 9, which is an extended quotation. Some lines are indented twice to further set them apart.

### **Special concepts in this chapter**

#### **Judgment**

This chapter explains that there is one thing that awaits all people: judgment. When people die, they will all face Yahweh's judgment. (See: [judge, judgment](#))

#### **Links:**

- [Ecclesiastes 09:01 Notes](#)

**Ecclesiastes 9:1****UDB:**

<sup>1</sup> I thought about all those things, and I decided that God controls what happens to everyone, even those who are wise and those who are righteous. No one knows whether others will love them or whether they will hate them.

**ULB:**

9<sup>1</sup> For I thought about all this in my mind to understand about the righteous and wise people and their deeds. They are all in God's hands. No one knows whether love or hate will come to someone.

**translationWords:**

- [mind](#)
- [understand, understanding](#)
- [righteous, righteousness](#)
- [wise, wisdom](#)
- [works, deeds, work, acts](#)
- [God](#)
- [hand, right hand, to hand over](#)
- [know, knowledge, make known](#)
- [love](#)

**translationNotes:**

- **I thought about all this in my mind** - AT: "I thought very deeply about all this"
- **They are all in God's hands** - Here the word "they" refers to "the righteous and wise people" as well as "their deeds."
- **in God's hands** - Here the word "hands" refers to power and authority. AT: "under God's control" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ecclesiastes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 09 General Notes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 09 Translation Questions](#)

**Ecclesiastes 9:2****UDB:**

<sup>2</sup> But we know that some time in the future we will all die.

It does not matter whether we act righteously or wickedly,  
 whether we are good or whether we are bad,  
 whether we are acceptable for worshiping God  
 or whether we have done things to cause us to be unacceptable.

It does not matter if we offer sacrifices to God or if we do not.

It does not matter if we do what we have promised God that we will do or if we do not.

We all die.

The same thing will happen to good people and to sinful people,  
 to those who solemnly promise to do things for God and to those  
 who are afraid to make such promises.

**ULB:**

<sup>2</sup> Everyone has the same fate. The same fate awaits

righteous people and wicked,  
 the good, [1]Some modern versions copy ancient versions which have *the good and the bad* . In this way, they make the phrase complete. Translators may decide to imitate them.  
 the clean and the unclean,  
 and the one who sacrifices and the one who does not sacrifice. As good people will die,  
 so also will the sinner. As the one who swears will die,  
 so also will the man who fears to make an oath.

**translationWords:**

- evil, wicked, wickedness
- good, goodness
- clean, cleanse
- unclean
- sacrifice, offering

- death, die, dead
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh
- oath, swear, swear by

**translationNotes:**

- **righteous people and wicked** - (See: [Merism](#))
- **the clean and the unclean** - (See: [Merism](#))
- **the one who sacrifices and the one who does not sacrifice** - (See: [Merism](#))
- **As good people ... so also will the sinner** - (See: [Merism](#))
- **the one who swears ... so also will the man who fears to make an oath** - (See: [Merism](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ecclesiastes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 09 General Notes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 09 Translation Questions](#)



## Ecclesiastes 9:3

### UDB:

<sup>3</sup> It seems wrong that the same thing happens to everyone on this earth. Everyone dies. Furthermore, people's inner beings are full of evil. People do foolish things while they are alive, and then they join those who are dead.

### ULB:

<sup>3</sup> There is an evil fate for everything that is done under the sun, one destiny for everyone. The hearts of human beings are full of evil, and madness is in their hearts while they live. So after that they go to the dead.

### translationWords:

- [destiny, destine, destined](#)
- [heart](#)
- [life, live, living, alive](#)

### translationNotes:

- **everything that is done** - AT: "everything that people do" (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **one destiny** - Here the word "destiny" refers to death.
- **The hearts of human beings are full of evil, and madness is in their hearts** - Here the word "hearts" refers to the thoughts and emotions. AT: "Human beings are full of evil, and their thoughts are madness" (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **they go to the dead** - AT: "they go to the place of the dead" or "they die".

### Links:

- [Introduction to Ecclesiastes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 09 General Notes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 09 Translation Questions](#)

**Ecclesiastes 9:4-5****UDB:**

<sup>4</sup> While we are alive, we can expect that good things will happen to us. We despise dogs, but it is better to be a dog that is alive than to be a majestic lion that is dead.

<sup>5</sup> We who are alive know that some day we will die,  
but dead people do not know anything.  
Dead people do not receive any more rewards,  
and people soon forget them.

**ULB:**

<sup>4</sup> For anyone who is united to all the living, there is hope, just as a living dog is better than a dead lion.[1]Some modern versions have *For what is preferable? For all the living, this is sure: a living dog is better than a dead lion* .

<sup>5</sup> For living people know they will die,  
but the dead do not know anything.  
They no longer have any reward  
because their memory is forgotten.

**translationWords:**

- [hope](#)
- [death, die, dead](#)
- [lion](#)
- [reward](#)

**translationNotes:**

- **their memory is forgotten** - AT: “people forget them” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ecclesiastes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 09 General Notes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 09 Translation Questions](#)

**Ecclesiastes 9:6-8****UDB:**

<sup>6</sup> While they were alive, they loved people, they hated people, they envied people,  
but they stop doing any of that when they die.

They will never again be a part of anything that happens here on the earth.

<sup>7</sup> So I say, be joyful while you eat your food and drink your wine, because that is what God wants you to do. <sup>8</sup> Wear nice clothes and cause your face to have a good appearance.

**ULB:**

<sup>6</sup> Their love, hatred, and envy  
have vanished long ago.

They will never have a place again

in anything done under the sun. <sup>7</sup> Go your way, eat your bread with joy, and drink your wine with a happy heart, for God approves of celebrating good works. <sup>8</sup> Let your clothes be always white and your head anointed with oil.

**translationWords:**

- love
- envy, covet
- bread
- joy, joyful
- wine, wineskin, new wine
- God
- good, goodness
- works, deeds, work, acts
- anoint, anointed
- oil

**translationNotes:**

- **anything done under the sun** - AT: “anything that people do under the sun” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **eat your bread with joy, and drink your wine with a happy heart** - These two phrases share similar meanings and emphasize the importance of enjoying the basic activities of life. (See: [Parallelism](#))

- **eat your bread with joy** - AT: “enjoy your food”
- **drink your wine with a happy heart** - Here the word “heart” refers to the emotions. AT: “drink your wine joyfully” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **Let your clothes be always white and your head anointed with oil** - Wearing white clothes and anointing one’s head with oil were both signs of gladness and celebration.
- **your head anointed with oil** - AT: “anoint your head with oil” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ecclesiastes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 09 General Notes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 09 Translation Questions](#)

## Ecclesiastes 9:9-10

### UDB:

<sup>9</sup> Enjoy living with your wife whom you love, all during the time that God has given to you to be alive here on this earth. Even though it is difficult to understand why many things happen, this life with your wife is your reward for doing the work that you do here on this earth. <sup>10</sup> Whatever you are able to do, do it with all your energy, because at some point you will die, and in the place of the dead where you are going, no one works or plans to do anything or knows anything or has any wisdom.

### ULB:

<sup>9</sup> Live happily with the wife whom you love all the days of your life of uselessness, the days that God has given you under the sun during your days of uselessness. That is your reward in life for your work under the sun. <sup>10</sup> Whatever your hand finds to do, work at it with your strength, because there is no work or explanation or knowledge or wisdom in Sheol, where you are going.

### translationWords:

- [life, live, living, alive](#)
- [hand, right hand, to hand over](#)
- [strength, strengthen](#)
- [know, knowledge, make known](#)
- [wise, wisdom](#)
- [hades, sheol](#)

### translationNotes:

- **Live happily with the wife whom you love** - One should love the wife he has. AT: “Since you have a wife whom you love, live happily with her”
- **Whatever your hand finds to do** - AT: “Whatever you are able to do” (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **there is no work or explanation or knowledge or wisdom** - AT: “the dead do not work or explain or know or have wisdom”

### Links:

- [Introduction to Ecclesiastes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 09 General Notes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 09 Translation Questions](#)

## **Ecclesiastes 9:11-12**

### **UDB:**

<sup>11</sup> I have seen something else here on the earth:

The person who runs fastest does not always win the race,  
the strongest soldiers do not always win the battle,  
the wisest people do not always have food,  
the smartest people do not always become rich,  
and the people who have studied a lot are not always honored by others.  
We cannot always control what things will happen to us and where they will happen.

<sup>12</sup> No one knows when he will die.

Fish are cruelly caught in a net,  
and birds are caught in snares.  
Similarly, people experience disasters  
at times when they do not expect them to happen.

### **ULB:**

<sup>11</sup> I have seen some interesting things under the sun:

The race does not belong to swift people.  
The battle does not belong to strong people.  
Bread does not belong to wise people.  
Riches do not belong to people of understanding.  
Favor does not belong to people of knowledge.  
Instead, time and chance affect them all.

<sup>12</sup> For no one knows his time to die,  
just like fish trapped in a net of death,  
or just like birds caught in a snare.  
Like animals, human beings are imprisoned in evil times  
that suddenly fall on them.

**translationWords:**

- understand, understanding
- favor, favorable, favoritism
- time
- death, die, dead
- snare, trap
- evil, wicked, wickedness

**translationNotes:**

- **time and chance affect them all** - “what happens and when it happens affect them all” (See: **Idiom**)
- **affect them all** - Here the words “them all” refer to race, battle, bread, riches, and favor.
- **like fish ... like birds ... Like animals, human beings** - Death catches human beings when they do not expect it, just like people catch animals when they do not expect it. (See: **Simile**)
- **in evil times that suddenly fall on them** - Possible meanings are 1) “in bad circumstances that suddenly happen to them” or 2) “by death that suddenly overtakes them.” (See: **Idiom**)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ecclesiastes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 09 General Notes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 09 Translation Questions](#)

## Ecclesiastes 9:13-15

### UDB:

<sup>13</sup> Once I saw here on this earth something that a wise man did that impressed me. <sup>14</sup> There was a small town, where only a few people lived. The army of a great king came to that town and surrounded it. They built dirt ramps up against the walls in order to climb up and attack the town. <sup>15</sup> In that town there was someone who was poor but very wise. Because of what that person suggested, the town was saved, but people soon forgot about him.

### ULB:

<sup>13</sup> I have also seen wisdom under the sun in a way that seemed great to me. <sup>14</sup> There was a small city with only a few men in it, and a great king came against it and besieged it and built great siege ramps against it. <sup>15</sup> Now in the city was found a poor, wise man, who by his wisdom saved the city. Yet later, no one remembered that same poor man.

### translationWords:

- [king](#)
- [siege, besiege](#)
- [save, safe](#)

### translationNotes:

- **in the city was found a poor, wise man** - AT: “in the city, people found a poor, wise man” or “a poor, wise man lived in the city” (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Idiom](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to Ecclesiastes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 09 General Notes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 09 Translation Questions](#)



## Ecclesiastes 9:16

### UDB:

<sup>16</sup> So I realized that although being wise is better than being strong, if you are poor, no one will appreciate what you do, and people will soon forget what you said.

### ULB:

<sup>16</sup> So I concluded, “Wisdom is better than strength, but the poor man’s wisdom is despised, and his words are not heard.”

### translationWords:

- [wise, wisdom](#)
- [strength, strengthen](#)
- [word](#)

### translationNotes:

- **the poor man’s wisdom is despised** - Since the man was poor, the people did not appreciate the man’s wisdom, nor honor him for his wisdom. AT: “people despise the poor man’s wisdom” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **his words are not heard** - They people stopped listening to him. AT: “they do not listen to what he says” or “they do not take his advice” (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Metonymy](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to Ecclesiastes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 09 General Notes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 09 Translation Questions](#)

**Ecclesiastes 9:17-18****UDB:**

<sup>17</sup> A wise man who speaks quietly—people hear him better  
than they hear a king who is shouting to a foolish crowd.

<sup>18</sup> Being wise is more useful  
than having a lot of weapons;  
however, if a person does just one foolish thing,  
he might ruin many good things that others have done.

**ULB:**

<sup>17</sup> The words of wise people spoken quietly are heard better  
than the shouts of any ruler among fools.

<sup>18</sup> Wisdom is better than weapons of war,  
but one sinner can ruin much good.

**translationWords:**

- ruler, rulers, rule
- fool, foolish, folly
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- good, goodness

**translationNotes:**

- **are heard better** - AT: “are understood better”

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ecclesiastes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 09 General Notes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 09 Translation Questions](#)

## **Ecclesiastes 10 General Notes**

### **Structure and formatting**

Some translations prefer to set apart extended quotations, prayers or songs. The ULB and many other English translations indent the lines of chapter 10, which is an extended quotation. Some lines are indented twice to further set them apart.

### **Special concepts in this chapter**

#### **Advice**

This chapter gives a series of disconnected pieces of advice. Translators should not try to smooth the transitions between these pieces of advice. The advice in these statements do not apply in every situation. Therefore, they should be seen as “good ideas.”

#### **Links:**

- [Ecclesiastes 10:01 Notes](#)

**Ecclesiastes 10:1-3****UDB:**

<sup>1</sup> A few dead flies in a bottle of perfume cause all the perfume to stink.

Similarly, a small amount of acting foolishly can have a greater effect than acting wisely.

<sup>2</sup> If people think sensibly, it will lead them to do what is right;  
if they think foolishly, it causes them to do what is wrong.

<sup>3</sup> Even while foolish people walk along the road,  
they show that they do not have good sense.  
They show everyone that they are not wise.

**ULB:****10**

<sup>1</sup> As dead flies cause perfume to stink,  
so a little folly can overpower wisdom and honor.

<sup>2</sup> The heart of a wise person tends to the right,  
but the heart of a fool tends to the left.

<sup>3</sup> When a fool walks down a road,  
his thinking is deficient,  
proving to everyone he is a fool.

**translationWords:**

- death, die, dead
- fool, foolish, folly
- wise, wisdom
- honor, to honor
- heart

**translationNotes:**

- **As dead flies ... so a little folly** - Just as flies can ruin perfume, so folly can ruin a person's reputation for wisdom and honor. (See: [Simile](#))

- **The heart of a wise person ... the heart of a fool** - Here the word “heart” refers to the mind or will. AT: “The way a wise person thinks ... the way a fool thinks” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **tends to the right ... tends to the left** - Here the words “right” and “left” refer to what is right and wrong. AT: “tends to doing what is right ... tends to doing what is wrong” (See: [Idiom](#))
- **his thinking is deficient** - AT: “he is stupid”

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ecclesiastes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 10 General Notes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 10 Translation Questions](#)

**Ecclesiastes 10:4****UDB:**

<sup>4</sup> Do not quit your job when a ruler is angry with you.

If you remain calm, he will probably stop being angry.

**ULB:**

<sup>4</sup> If the emotions of a ruler rise up against you, do not leave your work.

Calm can quiet down great outrage.

**translationWords:**

- ruler, rulers, rule
- works, deeds, work, acts

**translationNotes:**

- **If the emotions of a ruler rise up against you** - AT: "If a ruler becomes angry with you"  
(See: [Metonymy](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ecclesiastes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 10 General Notes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 10 Translation Questions](#)

**Ecclesiastes 10:5-7****UDB:**

- <sup>5</sup> There is something else that I have seen here on this earth,  
     something that rulers sometimes do that is wrong:  
<sup>6</sup> they appoint foolish people to have important positions,  
     while they appoint rich people to have unimportant positions.  
<sup>7</sup> They allow slaves to ride on horses like rich people usually do,  
     but they force officials to walk like slaves usually do.

**ULB:**

- <sup>5</sup> There is an evil that I have seen under the sun,  
     a kind of error that comes from a ruler:  
<sup>6</sup> Fools are given leadership positions,  
     while successful men are given low positions.  
<sup>7</sup> I have seen slaves riding horses,  
     and successful men walking like slaves on the ground.

**translationWords:**

- evil, wicked, wickedness
- servant, slave, slavery
- horse

**translationNotes:**

- **Fools are given leadership positions** - AT: "Rulers give positions of leadership to fools" (See: *Active or Passive*)
- **successful men are given low positions** - AT: "they give low positions to successful men" (See: *Active or Passive*)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ecclesiastes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 10 General Notes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 10 Translation Questions](#)



**Ecclesiastes 10:8-9****UDB:**

<sup>8</sup> It is possible that those who dig pits

will fall into one of those pits.

It is possible that someone who tears down a wall

will be bitten by a snake that is in that wall.

<sup>9</sup> If you work in a quarry,

it is possible that a stone will fall on you and injure you.

It is possible that men who split logs

will be injured by one of those logs.

**ULB:**

<sup>8</sup> Anyone who digs a pit

can fall into it, and whenever someone breaks down a wall,

a snake can bite him.

<sup>9</sup> Whoever cuts out stones

can be hurt by them,

and the man who chops wood

is endangered by it.

**translationWords:**

- **pit**

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - Work is not without risks.
- **can be hurt by them** - AT: "those stones can hurt him" (See: **Active or Passive**)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ecclesiastes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 10 General Notes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 10 Translation Questions](#)

**Ecclesiastes 10:10-11****UDB:**

<sup>10</sup> If your axe is not sharp,

you will need to work harder to cut down a tree,  
but by using wisdom, you will succeed.

<sup>11</sup> If a snake bites someone before the snake is charmed,

then that person's ability to charm snakes will not benefit him.

**ULB:**

<sup>10</sup> If an iron blade is dull, and a man does not sharpen it, then he must use more strength, but wisdom provides an advantage for success.

<sup>11</sup> If a snake bites before it is charmed,

then there is no advantage for the charmer.

**translationWords:**

- [strength, strengthen](#)
- [wise, wisdom](#)

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - Some proverbs
- **wisdom provides an advantage for success** - A wise person would have sharpened his blade and would not have had to work so hard.
- **before it is charmed** - AT: "before the snake charmer charms it" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ecclesiastes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 10 General Notes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 10 Translation Questions](#)

**Ecclesiastes 10:12****UDB:**

<sup>12</sup> Wise people say what is sensible, and because of that, people honor them,  
but foolish people are destroyed by what they themselves say.

**ULB:**

<sup>12</sup> The words of a wise man's mouth are gracious,  
but the lips of a fool swallow himself.

**translationWords:**

- [word](#)
- [grace, gracious](#)
- [fool, foolish, folly](#)

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - Proverbs continued.
- **The words of a wise man's mouth are gracious** - AT: "The things that a wise man says are gracious" (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **the lips of a fool swallow himself** - Here the word "swallow" has the sense of destroy. AT: "The things that a foolish man says destroy him" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ecclesiastes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 10 General Notes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 10 Translation Questions](#)

**Ecclesiastes 10:13-14****UDB:**

<sup>13</sup> When foolish people start to talk, they say foolish things,

and they end by saying things that are both wicked and foolish.

<sup>14</sup> They talk too much.

None of us knows what will happen in the future,

or what will happen after we die.

**ULB:**

<sup>13</sup> As words begin to flow from a fool's mouth, foolishness comes out,  
and at the end his mouth flows with wicked madness.

<sup>14</sup> A fool multiplies words,  
but no one knows what is coming.  
Who knows what is coming after him?

**translationWords:**

- evil, wicked, wickedness
- know, knowledge, make known

**translationNotes:**

- **As words begin to flow from a fool's mouth** - AT: "As a fool begins to speak" (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **at the end his mouth flows with wicked madness** - AT: "as he finishes talking, he speaks wicked madness" (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **A fool multiplies words** - AT: "A fool keeps on talking" (See: [Idiom](#))
- **no one knows what is coming** - See how you translated this in [8:7](#).
- **Who knows what is coming after him?** - The writer asks this question to emphasize that no one know what will happen in the future. AT: "No one knows what is coming after him." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ecclesiastes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 10 General Notes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 10 Translation Questions](#)

## **Ecclesiastes 10:15**

### **UDB:**

<sup>15</sup> Foolish people become very exhausted by the work that they do,  
with the result that they are even unable to find the road to their town.

### **ULB:**

<sup>15</sup> The toil of fools wearies them,  
so that they do not even know the road to town.

### **translationWords:**

### **translationNotes:**

- **wearies them** - “causes them to feel tired”
- **so that they do not even know the road to town** - Possible meanings are 1) that the foolish person becomes so tired from working too hard that he is unable to find his way anywhere, or 2) that the foolish person becomes tired from working too hard because he does not know enough to go home.

### **Links:**

- [Introduction to Ecclesiastes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 10 General Notes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 10 Translation Questions](#)

**Ecclesiastes 10:16-17****UDB:**

<sup>16</sup> Terrible things will happen to the people of a nation whose ruler is a foolish young person,  
whose leaders continually eat, all during the day, every day.

<sup>17</sup> But how fortunate is a nation if its ruler comes from a noble family,  
if its leaders feast only at the proper times,  
and if they eat and drink only to be strong, not to become drunk.

**ULB:**

<sup>16</sup> Woe to you, land, if your king is a young boy,  
and if your leaders begin feasting in the morning!

<sup>17</sup> But blessed are you, land, if your king is the son of nobles,  
and if your leaders eat at the right time,  
for strength, and not for drunkenness!

**translationWords:**

- king
- feast
- bless, blessed, blessing
- noble, nobleman
- drunk, drunkard

**translationNotes:**

- **Woe to you, land ... blessed are you, land** - In these verse, the writer is speaking to the nation as if it were a person. (See: [Apostrophe](#))
- **if your king is a young boy** - This means that the king is inexperienced or immature. Some modern versions, however, interpret the Hebrew word as “a servant.”
- **begin feasting in the morning** - This implies that the leaders are more concerned with having a good time than with leading the nation.
- **king is the son of nobles** - This implies that the son has been trained by his elders in the customs of being a good king.



**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ecclesiastes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 10 General Notes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 10 Translation Questions](#)

**Ecclesiastes 10:18-19****UDB:**

<sup>18</sup> Some men are very lazy and do not repair the beams of their roof,  
with the result that the roof sags and collapses.

If they do not repair the roof,  
water will leak into the house when it rains.

<sup>19</sup> Eating food and drinking wine makes us laugh and be happy.  
If you have enough money, you can buy everything you need.

**ULB:**

<sup>18</sup> Because of laziness the roof sinks in,  
and because of idle hands the house leaks.

<sup>19</sup> People prepare food for laughter,  
wine brings enjoyment to life,  
and money fills the need for everything.

**translationWords:**

- wine, wineskin, new wine
- life, live, living, alive

**translationNotes:**

- **Because of laziness the roof sinks in** - A lazy person does not keep up on the regular house maintenance.
- **because of idle hands** - AT: “because of an idle person” (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **People prepare food for laughter** - AT: “People prepare food in order to laugh” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))
- **wine brings enjoyment to life** - AT: “wine helps people to enjoy life” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))
- **money fills the need for everything** - Possible meanings are 1) “money provides for every need” or 2) “money provides for both food and wine.”

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ecclesiastes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 10 General Notes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 10 Translation Questions](#)

**Ecclesiastes 10:20****UDB:**

<sup>20</sup> Do not even think about cursing the king,

or about cursing rich people, even when you are alone in your bedroom.

It is always possible that a little bird will hear what you are saying  
and tell those people what you said about them.

**ULB:**

<sup>20</sup> Do not curse the king, not even in your mind,  
and do not curse rich people in your bedroom.

For a bird of the sky might carry your words;  
whatever has wings can spread the matter.

**translationWords:**

- [curse, cursed](#)
- [mind](#)
- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [word](#)

**translationNotes:**

- **not even in your mind** - “not even in your thoughts” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **rich people in your bedroom** - “rich people when you are in your bedroom.” This means that you should not curse rich people even when you are in a private place where no one else will hear.
- **For a bird of the sky ... can spread the matter** - These two lines mean basically the same thing and are combined for emphasis. The writer uses the metaphor of a bird to say that people will find out what you have said, one way or another. (See: [Parallelism](#) and [Metaphor](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ecclesiastes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 10 General Notes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 10 Translation Questions](#)

## **Ecclesiastes 11 General Notes**

### **Structure and formatting**

Some translations prefer to set apart extended quotations, prayers or songs. The ULB and many other English translations indent the lines of chapter 10, which is an extended quotation. Some lines are indented twice to further set them apart.

### **Special concepts in this chapter**

#### **Advice**

This chapter gives a series of disconnected pieces of advice. Translators should not try to smooth the transitions between these pieces of advice. The advice in these statements do not apply in every situation. Therefore, they should be seen as “good ideas.”

#### **Links:**

- [Ecclesiastes 11:01 Notes](#)

**Ecclesiastes 11:1-3****UDB:**

<sup>1</sup> Give generously to others some of the money that you have;

if you do that, later you will get back an equal amount.

<sup>2</sup> Share some of what you have with seven or eight others,

because you do not know when you will experience a disaster and will need their help.

<sup>3</sup> It is true that when clouds are full of water,

they pour rain on the earth.

Similarly, wherever a tree falls on the ground,

that is where it will remain.

**ULB:****11**

<sup>1</sup> Send out your bread on the waters,

for you will find it again after many days.

<sup>2</sup> Share it with seven, even eight people,

for you do not know what disasters are coming on the earth.

<sup>3</sup> If the clouds are full of rain,

they empty themselves on the earth,

and if a tree falls toward the south or toward the north,

wherever the tree falls, there it will remain.

**translationWords:**

- bread
- water, waters
- earth, earthly

**translationNotes:**

- **Send out your bread on the waters, for you will find it again after many days** - Possible meanings are 1) that a person should be generous with his possessions and will then receive generously from others (UDB) (See: [Metaphor](#)), or 2) that a person should invest his resources overseas and will make a profit from it.
- **Share it with seven, even eight people** - Possible meanings are 1) to share your possessions with many people, or 2) to invest your resources in multiple places.
- **seven, even eight** - AT: “7, even 8” or “multiple” (See: [Numbers](#) and [Idiom](#))
- **what disasters are coming on the earth** - Here the phrase “on the earth” means “in the world” or “in society.”
- **empty themselves on the earth** - Here the phrase “on the earth” means “on the ground.”
- **toward the south or toward the north** - AT: “in any direction”

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ecclesiastes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 11 General Notes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 11 Translation Questions](#)

**Ecclesiastes 11:4-5****UDB:**

<sup>4</sup> If farmers see in what direction the wind is blowing,

they will know whether it is wise at that time to plant things or not.

It is also true that if farmers look at the clouds and see that they are blowing from the west and will bring rain,

they will not try to harvest their crops on that day.

<sup>5</sup> We do not know where the wind comes from or where it goes,

and we do not know how bodies are formed in a woman's womb.

Similarly, God is the one who makes everything,

and we cannot fully understand what he does.

**ULB:**

<sup>4</sup> Anyone who watches the wind might not plant,

and anyone who watches the clouds might not harvest.

<sup>5</sup> As you do not know the path of the wind,

nor how a baby's bones grow in the pregnant womb, [1]Some modern versions have *As you do not know the path of the spirit to the baby's bones in the pregnant womb* .

so also you cannot comprehend the work of God,

who created everything.

**translationWords:**

- harvest
- womb
- works, deeds, work, acts
- God
- create, creation, Creator



**translationNotes:**

- **Anyone who watches the wind might not plant** - Possible meanings are 1) “Any farmer who pays attention to the wind will not plant when the wind is blowing in the wrong direction” or 2) “Any farmer who pays too much attention to the wind will never plant.”
- **anyone who watches the clouds might not harvest** - Possible meanings are 1) “Any farmer who pays attention to the clouds will not harvest when it is about to rain” or 2) “Any farmer who pays too much attention to the clouds will never harvest.”
- **how a baby’s bones grow** - Possible meanings are 1) “how a baby grows” or 2) literally, “how the bones of a baby grow.” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ecclesiastes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 11 General Notes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 11 Translation Questions](#)

**Ecclesiastes 11:6-8****UDB:**

- <sup>6</sup> Start planting your seeds in the morning,  
and do not stop planting them until the evening,  
because you do not know which ones will grow better,  
the ones you plant in the morning or the ones you plant later in the  
day,  
or whether both will grow well.
- <sup>7</sup> It is very delightful to be alive  
and see the sun rise every morning.
- <sup>8</sup> Even if people live for many years,  
they should enjoy all of them.  
But they should not forget that some day they will die  
and then they will never be able to see any light again,  
and they do not know what will happen to them after they die.

**ULB:**

- <sup>6</sup> In the morning plant your seed;  
until the evening, work with your hands as needed,  
for you know not which will prosper,  
whether morning or evening, or this or that,  
or whether they will both alike be good.
- <sup>7</sup> Truly the light is sweet,  
and it is a pleasant thing for the eyes to see the sun.
- <sup>8</sup> If someone lives many years,  
let him be happy in all of them,  
but let him think about the coming days of darkness,  
for they will be many.  
Everything to come is vanishing vapor.

**translationWords:**

- seed
- prosper, prosperity, prosperous
- good, goodness
- amen, truly
- light
- darkness

**translationNotes:**

- **work with your hands** - AT: “keep on working” (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **whether morning or evening, or this or that** - These two phrases mean basically the same thing and emphasize that the person’s work may prosper, no matter what time he has done it. AT: “whether the seed that you planted in the morning or the seed that you planted in the evening.” (See: [Doublet](#) and [Ellipsis](#))
- **light is sweet** - Here the word “light” refers to being able to see the sun and therefore being alive. AT: “being able to see the sun is sweet” or “being alive is sweet.” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **for the eyes to see the sun** - This phrase means basically the same thing as the previous phrase. AT: “for a person to see the sun” or “to be alive.” (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Parallelism](#))
- **happy in all of them** - Here the word “them” refers to the years that a person is alive.
- **the coming days of darkness** - Here the word “darkness” refers to death. AT: “how many days that he will be dead.” (See: [Euphemism](#))
- **for they will be many** - Here the word “they” refers to the “days of darkness.” AT: “for he will be dead for many more days than he is alive” or “for he will be dead forever.”
- **Everything to come** - Possible meanings are 1) “Everything that happens after death” or 2) “Everything that happens in the future.”

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ecclesiastes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 11 General Notes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 11 Translation Questions](#)

**Ecclesiastes 11:9-10****UDB:**

<sup>9</sup> You young people, be happy while you are still young.

Enjoy doing the things that you want to do.

But do not forget that God will judge you one day

concerning all the things that you do.

<sup>10</sup> So when you are young, do not worry about anything,

and do not pay attention to the pains that you have in your body,

because we will not remain young and strong forever.

**ULB:**

<sup>9</sup> Take joy, young man, in your youth,

and let your heart be joyful in the days of your youth.

Pursue the good desires of your heart,

and whatever is within the sight of your eyes.

However, know that God will bring you into judgment for all these things.

<sup>10</sup> Drive anger away from your heart,

and ignore any pain in your body,

because youth and its strength are vapor.

**translationWords:**

- joy, joyful
- heart
- know, knowledge, make known
- God
- judge, judgment
- angry, anger
- strength, strengthen

**translationNotes:**

- **Take joy, young man, in your youth, and let your heart be joyful in the days of your youth** - These two phrases mean basically the same thing and are combined for emphasis. (See: [Parallelism](#))

- **let your heart be joyful** - Here the word “heart” refers to the emotions. AT: “be joyful” (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **Pursue the good desires of your heart** - Here the word “heart” may refer to the mind or emotions. AT: “Pursue the good things that you desire” or “Pursue the good things that you have determined to pursue”
- **whatever is within the sight of your eyes** - AT: “whatever you see that you desire” or “whatever you see to be best” (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **God will bring you into judgment for all these things** - AT: “God will make you account for all of your actions”
- **Drive anger away from your heart** - AT: “Refuse to be angry” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ecclesiastes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 11 General Notes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 11 Translation Questions](#)

## **Ecclesiastes 12 General Notes**

### **Structure and formatting**

Some translations prefer to set apart extended quotations, prayers or songs. The ULB and many other English translations indent the lines of chapter 10, which is an extended quotation. Some lines are indented twice to further set them apart.

### **Special concepts in this chapter**

#### **Advice**

This chapter gives a series of disconnected pieces of advice. Translators should not try to smooth the transitions between these pieces of advice. The advice in these statements do not apply in every situation. Therefore, they should be seen as “good ideas.”

#### **Yahweh**

At the end of a very impressive life, Solomon looks back and sees that the only real lasting thing in this world is Yahweh. The purpose of his life was to honor Yahweh, something he should have done far more throughout his life. Therefore, he felt that his life was wasted. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### **Links:**

- [Ecclesiastes 12:01 Notes](#)

**Ecclesiastes 12:1-2****UDB:**

<sup>1</sup> While you are still young, keep thinking about God, who created you.

Do that before you are old and you experience many troubles,  
during the years when you say,

“I no longer enjoy being alive.”

<sup>2</sup> When you become old, the light from the sun and moon and stars will seem dim to you,

and it will seem that the rain clouds always return quickly after it rains.

**ULB:**

12 <sup>1</sup> Also call to mind your Creator in the days of your youth,

before the days of difficulty come,

and before the years arrive when you say,

“I have no pleasure in them,”

<sup>2</sup> do this before the light of the sun and the moon and the stars grows dark,  
and dark clouds return after the rain.

**translationWords:**

- [call, calling, called, call out](#)
- [mind](#)
- [create, creation, Creator](#)

**translationNotes:**

- **call to mind** - AT: “remember” (See: [Idiom](#))
- **I have no pleasure in them** - Here the word “them” refers to “years.”

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ecclesiastes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 12 General Notes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 12 Translation Questions](#)

**Ecclesiastes 12:3****UDB:**

<sup>3</sup> Then your arms that you use to protect yourself,

and your legs that support your body will become weak.

Many of the teeth that you use to grind your food will fall out,

and your eyes that you use to look out of windows will not see clearly.

**ULB:**

<sup>3</sup> That will be the time when the palace guard tremble,

and strong men are bent over,

and the women who grind cease because they are few,

and those who look out of windows no longer see clearly.

**translationWords:**

- [time](#)
- [palace](#)
- [tremble](#)

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - The writer describes a house in which various activities stop. This appears to be a metaphor for the human body as it becomes old. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **the women who grind cease because they are few** - “the women who grind grain stop grinding grain because there are few of them”

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ecclesiastes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 12 General Notes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 12 Translation Questions](#)



**Ecclesiastes 12:4****UDB:**

<sup>4</sup> Your ears will no longer hear the noise in the streets,  
and you will no longer be able to hear clearly the sound of people  
grinding grain with millstones.  
You will be awakened in the morning by hearing the birds singing,  
but you will not be able to hear well the songs that the birds sing.

**ULB:**

<sup>4</sup> That will be the time when the doors are shut in the street,  
and the sound of grinding stops,  
when men are startled at the voice of a bird,  
and the singing of girls' voices fades away.

**translationWords:**

- [voice](#)

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - The writer continues his metaphor. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **the doors are shut in the street** - AT: "people shut the doors that lead to the street" (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **when men are startled at the voice of a bird** - AT: "when the voice of a bird startles men" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ecclesiastes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 12 General Notes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 12 Translation Questions](#)

**Ecclesiastes 12:5****UDB:**

<sup>5</sup> You will be afraid to be in high places

and afraid of dangers on the roads that you walk on.

Your hair will become white like the flowers of almond trees.

When you try to walk, you will drag yourself along like grasshoppers,

and you will no longer desire a woman at all.

Then you will die and go to your eternal home,

and the people who will mourn for you will be in the streets.

**ULB:**

<sup>5</sup> That will be the time when men become afraid of heights

and of dangers along on the road,

and when the almond tree blossoms,

and when grasshoppers drag themselves along,

and when natural desires fail.

Then man goes to his eternal home

and the mourners go down the streets.

**translationWords:**

- fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh
- everlasting, eternal, eternity
- mourn, mourning

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - The writer continues his metaphor. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **when natural desires fail** - AT: “when people no longer desire what they once did naturally” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))
- **when the almond tree blossoms** - The “almond tree” is a tree that blossoms in the winter with white flowers.
- **Then man goes to his eternal home** - This refers to death. (See: [Euphemism](#))

- **the mourners go down the streets** - Possible meanings are 1) that mourners go down the streets to attend a funeral, or 2) that mourners go down the streets to the house of the person who is about to die.

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ecclesiastes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 12 General Notes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 12 Translation Questions](#)

**Ecclesiastes 12:6-7****UDB:**

<sup>6</sup> Think much about God now, because soon our lives will end,

like silver chains or golden bowls that break easily,  
or like pitchers that are broken at the water fountain,  
or like broken pulleys at a well.

<sup>7</sup> Then our corpses will decay and become dirt again,

and our spirits will return to God, the one who gave us our spirits.

**ULB:**

<sup>6</sup> Call to mind your Creator

before the silver cord is cut,  
or the golden bowl is crushed,  
or the pitcher is shattered at the spring,  
or the water wheel is broken at the well,

<sup>7</sup> before the dust returns to the earth where it came from,  
and the spirit returns to God who gave it.

**translationWords:**

- call, calling, called, call out
- mind
- create, creation, Creator
- silver
- gold
- fountain, spring
- well, cistern
- earth, earthly
- spirit, spiritual
- God

**translationNotes:**

- **Call to mind** - “remember” (See: [Idiom](#))
- **before the silver cord is cut ... or the water wheel is broken at the well** - The writer compares death to various broken items. Death will break the body just as suddenly as people accidentally break these items while they are using them. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **the silver cord is cut** - “someone cuts the silver cord” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **the golden bowl is crushed** - “someone crushes the golden bowl” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **the pitcher is shattered** - “someone shatters the pitcher ” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **the water wheel is broken** - “someone breaks the water wheel” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **dust returns to the earth** - Here the word “dust” refers to the human body that has decomposed. (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ecclesiastes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 12 General Notes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 12 Translation Questions](#)

**Ecclesiastes 12:8-9****UDB:**

<sup>8</sup> So I, the Teacher, say again that everything is temporary and useless.

<sup>9</sup> I, the Teacher, was considered to be a very wise man, and I taught the people many things. I assembled and wrote down many proverbs, and I carefully thought about them and put them in order.

**ULB:**

<sup>8</sup> “A mist of vapor,” says the Teacher, “everything is vanishing vapor.” <sup>9</sup>  
The Teacher was wise and he taught the people knowledge. He studied and contemplated and set in order many proverbs.

**translationWords:**

- [teacher, Teacher](#)
- [wise, wisdom](#)
- [know, knowledge, make known](#)
- [proverb](#)

**translationNotes:**

- **everything is vanishing vapor** - “everything only lasts a short time, like steam that disappears.” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **contemplated and set in order** - “thought much about and arranged” or “thought much about and wrote down”

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ecclesiastes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 12 General Notes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 12 Translation Questions](#)

**Ecclesiastes 12:10-11****UDB:**

<sup>10</sup> I searched for words that would be pleasing to hear, and what I have written is reliable and true.

<sup>11</sup> The things that I and other wise people say teach people what they should do. They are like our shepherd.

**ULB:**

<sup>10</sup> The Teacher sought to write using vivid, upright words of truth. <sup>11</sup> The words of wise people are like goads. Like nails driven deeply are the words of the masters in collections of their proverbs, which are taught by one shepherd.

**translationWords:**

- upright, uprightness
- word
- true, truth, come true
- lord, master, sir
- proverb
- shepherd, to shepherd

**translationNotes:**

- **The words of wise people ... taught by one shepherd** - The writer compares the teacher who uses his words to instruct people to a shepherd who uses his tools to lead his flock. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **The words of wise people are like goads** - “Wise people encourage us to act, like a sharp stick encourages an animal to move.” (See: [Simile](#))
- **Like nails driven deeply are the words of the masters in collections of their proverbs** - “Like you can depend on a nail that has been driven deep, you can depend on proverbs written by wise people.” (See: [Simile](#))
- **the words of the masters in collections of their proverbs** - “the words of those who are experts on collections of proverbs”
- **which are taught by one shepherd** - “which one shepherd teaches” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ecclesiastes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 12 General Notes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 12 Translation Questions](#)

**Ecclesiastes 12:12****UDB:**

<sup>12</sup> So, my son, pay careful attention to what I have written, and choose carefully what you read that others have written. This work of writing many books is endless. Trying to study them all will be an endless task.

**ULB:**

<sup>12</sup> My son, be aware of something more: the making of many books, which has no end and much study brings weariness to the body.

**translationWords:**

- [son, son of](#)

**translationNotes:**

- **the making of many books, which has no end** - “people will never stop making many books”
- **brings weariness to the body** - “makes the person tired” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ecclesiastes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 12 General Notes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 12 Translation Questions](#)



**Ecclesiastes 12:13-14****UDB:**

<sup>13</sup> Now you have heard all that I have told you,

and here is the conclusion:

Revere God, and obey his commandments,

because those commandments summarize everything that people should do.

<sup>14</sup> And do not forget that God will judge everything that we do,

good things and bad things,

even things that we do secretly.

**ULB:**

<sup>13</sup> The end of the matter

after everything has been heard,

is that you must fear God and keep his commandments,

for this is the whole duty of mankind.

<sup>14</sup> For God will bring every deed into judgment,

along with every hidden thing,

whether it is good or evil.

**translationWords:**

- fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh
- God
- command, to command, commandment
- works, deeds, work, acts
- judge, judgment
- good, goodness
- evil, wicked, wickedness

**translationNotes:**

- **The end of the matter** - “the final conclusion on the matter”
- **after everything has been heard** - AT: “after you have heard everything” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ecclesiastes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 12 General Notes](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 12 Translation Questions](#)

## translationQuestions

### Ecclesiastes 1

Q? Of whom was the Teacher a descendant?

A. The Teacher was a descendant of David, king in Jerusalem. [1:1]

---

Q? What remains forever?

A. The earth remains forever. [1:4]

---

Q? By what is the eye not satisfied?

A. The eye is not satisfied by what it sees. [1:8]

---

Q? What will be done?

A. Whatever has been done is what will be done. [1:9]

---

Q? To what did the Teacher apply his mind?

A. The Teacher applied his mind to study and to search out by wisdom everything that is done under heaven. [1:13]

---

Q? To what do all the deeds that are done under the sun amount?

A. All the deeds that are done under the sun amount to vapor and an attempt to shepherd the wind. [1:14]

---

Q? Where is there much frustration?

A. In the abundance of wisdom there is much frustration. [1:18]

---

## Ecclesiastes 2

**Q?** What was just a temporary breeze?

**A.** Pleasure was just a temporary breeze. [2:1]

---

**Q?** What did the Teacher want to find out?

**A.** The Teacher wanted to find out what was good for people to do under heaven during the days of their lives. [2:3]

---

**Q?** Why did the Teacher create pools of water?

**A.** The Teacher created pools of water to water a forest where trees were grown. [2:6]

---

**Q?** How did the Teacher do things that would bring pleasure to any man on earth?

**A.** By means of numerous wives and concubines, he did things that would bring pleasure to any man on earth. [2:8]

---

**Q?** In what did the Teacher's heart rejoice?

**A.** The Teacher's heart rejoiced in all his labor. [2:10]

---

**Q?** Where was there no profit?

**A.** There was no profit under the sun. [2:11]

---

**Q?** What is in store for everyone?

**A.** The same destiny is in store for everyone. [2:14]

---

**Q?** Who is not remembered for very long?

**A.** The wise man, like the fool, is not remembered for very long. [2:16]

---

**Q?** Why did the Teacher hate all his accomplishments?

**A.** The Teacher hated all his accomplishments because he had to leave them behind to the man who came after him. [2:18]

---

**Q?** How did the Teacher's heart feel about his work?

**A.** The Teacher's heart began to despair over all the work that he did. [2:20]

---

**Q?** Why does the soul of the hard worker not find rest at night?

**A.** Every day his work is painful and stressful, so at night his soul does not find rest. [2:23]

---

**Q?** What is there nothing better than for anyone?

**A.** There is nothing better for anyone than to simply eat and drink and be satisfied with what is good in his work. [2:24]

---

**Q?** What does God give to the sinner?

**A.** To the sinner, God gives the work of gathering and storing up so that he may give it away to someone who pleases God. [2:26]

---

### **Ecclesiastes 3**

**Q?** For what things is there a season?

**A.** There is a season for every purpose under heaven. [3:1]

---

**Q?** What did the Teacher see?

**A.** The Teacher saw the work that God gave to human beings to complete. [3:10]

---

**Q?** What did God place in people's hearts?

**A.** God placed eternity in their hearts. [3:11]

---

**Q?** What is a gift from God?

**A.** The good that comes from one's work is a gift from God. [3:13]

---

**Q?** Why can nothing be added to or taken away from whatever God does?

**A.** Nothing can be added to it or taken away from it, because it is God who has done it. [3:14]

---

**Q?** What is often found in place of righteousness?

**A.** In place of righteousness wickedness is often found. [3:16]

---

**Q?** How are people like animals?

**A.** Like animals, people all die. They all must breathe the same air. Everything comes from the dust, and everything returns to the dust. [3:19-20]

---

**Q?** What is the assignment for each person?

**A.** The assignment for each person is to take pleasure in his work. [3:22]

---

## Ecclesiastes 4

**Q?** For what is there no comforter?

**A.** There is no comforter for the tears of the oppressed. [4:1]

---

**Q?** Who is more fortunate than both the living and the dead?

**A.** More fortunate than both the living and the dead is the one who has not yet lived. [4:3]

---

**Q?** What is better than two handfuls with the work that tries to shepherd the wind?

**A.** Better is a handful of profit with quiet work than two handfuls with the work that tries to shepherd the wind. [4:6]

---

**Q?** Why are two people better than one in the case that one falls?

**A.** Two people are better than one because if one falls, the other can lift up his friend. [4:9-10]

---

**Q?** What is not quickly broken?

**A.** A three-strand rope is not quickly broken. [4:12]

---

**Q?** What is better than to be an old and foolish king?

**A.** It is better to be a poor but wise youth than an old and foolish king. [4:13]

---

**Q?** What do people want to do to the new king?

**A.** People want to obey the new king. [4:16]

---

## Ecclesiastes 5

**Q?** Why should people go to the house of God?

**A.** People should go to the house of God to listen. [5:1]

---

**Q?** Why should people let their words be few?

**A.** God is in heaven, but people are on earth, so they should let their words be few. [5:2]

---

**Q?** What is better for a person to do than to make a vow that he does not carry out?

**A.** It is better for a person not to make a vow than to make a vow that he does not carry out. [5:5]

---

**Q?** When someone sees the poor being oppressed and robbed of just and right treatment, why should no one be astonished as if no one knows?

**A.** When someone sees the poor being oppressed and robbed of just and right treatment, he should not be astonished because there are men in power who watch those under them, and there are even higher ones over them. [5:8]

---

**Q?** What happens as prosperity increases?

**A.** As prosperity increases, so also do the people who consume it. [5:11]

---

**Q?** What does not allow a rich person to sleep well?

**A.** The wealth of a rich person does not allow him to sleep well. [5:12]

---

**Q?** What happens when the rich man loses his wealth through bad luck?

**A.** When the rich man loses his wealth through bad luck, his own son, one whom he has fathered, is left with nothing in his hands. [5:14]

---



\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** How is a man born and how will he leave this life?

**A.** A man is born naked from his mother's womb, so also he will leave this life naked. [5:15]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** Why does a person not call to mind very often the days of his life?

**A.** A person does not call to mind very often the days of his life, because God makes him keep busy with the things that he enjoys doing. [5:20]

\_\_\_\_\_

## Ecclesiastes 6

**Q?** What evil did the Teacher see?

**A.** The Teacher saw that God might give riches, wealth, and honor to a man so that he lacks nothing that he desires for himself, but then God gives him no ability to enjoy it. Instead, someone else uses his things. [6:1-2]

---

**Q?** If a man's heart is not satisfied with good and he is not buried with honor, who is better off than he is?

**A.** If a man's heart is not satisfied with good and he is not buried with honor, then a baby that is born dead is better off than he is. [6:3]

---

**Q?** Even if a man should live for two thousand years but does not learn to enjoy good things, where does he go?

**A.** Even if a man should live for two thousand years but does not learn to enjoy good things, he goes to the same place as everyone else. [6:6]

---

**Q?** Though all a man's work is to fill his mouth, what happens?

**A.** Though all a man's work is to fill his mouth, yet his appetite is not filled. [6:7]

---

**Q?** What happens the more words that are spoken?

**A.** The more words that are spoken, the more futility increases. [6:11]

---

## Ecclesiastes 7

**Q?** Why is it better to go to a house of mourning than to a house of feasting?

**A.** It is better to go to a house of mourning than to a house of feasting, for mourning comes to all people at the end of life. [7:2]

---

**Q?** Where is the heart of the wise?

**A.** The heart of the wise is in the house of mourning. [7:4]

---

**Q?** What is the laughter of fools like?

**A.** Like the crackling of thorns burning under a pot, so also is the laughter of fools. [7:6]

---

**Q?** What makes a wise man foolish?

**A.** Extortion makes a wise man foolish. [7:7]

---

**Q?** Why should people not be quick to anger in their spirit?

**A.** People should not be quick to anger in their spirit, for anger resides in the hearts of fools. [7:9]

---

**Q?** How is wisdom better than money?

**A.** Wisdom provides protection as money can provide protection, but the advantage of knowledge is that wisdom gives life to whoever has it. [7:12]

---

**Q?** When times are good, how should people live?

**A.** When times are good, people should live happily in that good. [7:14]

---

**Q?** What happened to wicked people whom the Teacher saw?

**A.** The Teacher saw wicked people who live a long life in spite of their evil. [7:15]

---

**Q?** What will happen for the person who fears God?

**A.** The person who fears God will meet all his obligations. [7:18]

---

**Q?** Why should people not listen to every word that is spoken?

**A.** People should not listen to every word that is spoken because they might hear their servant curse them. [7:21]

---

**Q?** Where is wisdom?

**A.** Wisdom is far off. [7:24]

---

**Q?** By whom will the sinner be taken?

**A.** The sinner will be taken by a woman whose heart is full of snares and nets, and whose hands are chains. [7:26]

---

**Q?** Although the Teacher found one righteous man among a thousand, what did he not find?

**A.** Although the Teacher found one righteous man among a thousand, a woman among all those he did not find. [7:28]

---

## Ecclesiastes 8

**Q?** What is a wise man?

**A.** A wise man is someone who knows what the events in life mean. [8:1]

---

**Q?** Why should people not hurry out of the king's presence, and should not stand in support of something wrong?

**A.** People should not hurry out of the king's presence, and should not stand in support of something wrong, for the king does whatever he desires. [8:3]

---

**Q?** Who avoids harm?

**A.** Whoever keeps the king's commands avoids harm. [8:5]

---

**Q?** Over what does no one have power?

**A.** No one has power over the breath of life to stop breathing, and no one has power over the day of his death. [8:8]

---

**Q?** By whom were the wicked praised?

**A.** The wicked were praised by people in the city where they had done their wicked deeds. [8:10]

---

**Q?** Even if a sinner does evil a hundred times and still lives for a long time, what will happen to those who respect God?

**A.** Even if a sinner does evil a hundred times and still lives for a long time, it will be well with those who respect God, who honor his presence with them. [8:12]

---

**Q?** Why does the Teacher recommend happiness?

**A.** The Teacher recommends happiness, because a man has no better thing under the sun than to eat and drink and to be happy. [8:15]

---

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** What can man not understand?

**A.** Man cannot understand the work that is done under the sun. [8:17]

\_\_\_\_\_

## Ecclesiastes 9

Q? Who is in God's hands?

A. The righteous and wise people are all in God's hands. [9:1]

---

Q? What is the same for everyone?

A. Everyone has the same fate. [9:2]

---

Q? Of what are the hearts of human beings full?

A. The hearts of human beings are full of evil. [9:3]

---

Q? Why do the dead no longer have any reward?

A. They no longer have any reward because their memory is forgotten. [9:5]

---

Q? What vanished long ago?

A. The dead people's love, hatred, and envy vanished long ago. [9:6]

---

Q? What should people do with whatever their hand finds to do?

A. Whatever their hand finds to do, they should work at it with their strength. [9:10]

---

Q? In what are human beings imprisoned?

A. Human beings are imprisoned in evil times that suddenly fall on them. [9:12]

---

Q? What happened to the poor, wise man, who by his wisdom saved the city?

A. No one remembered the poor, wise man, who by his wisdom saved the city. [9:15]

---

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** What is better than weapons of war?

**A.** Wisdom is better than weapons of war. [9:18]

\_\_\_\_\_



## Ecclesiastes 10

**Q?** What proves to everyone that a man is a fool?

**A.** When a man's thinking is deficient, this proves to everyone that he is a fool. [10:3]

---

**Q?** What did the Teacher see slaves doing?

**A.** The Teacher saw slaves riding horses. [10:7]

---

**Q?** What can happen whenever someone breaks down a wall?

**A.** Whenever someone breaks down a wall, a snake can bite him. [10:8]

---

**Q?** What happens if a man does not sharpen a dull iron blade?

**A.** If a man does not sharpen a dull iron blade, then he must use more strength. [10:10]

---

**Q?** At the end, with what does a fool's mouth flow?

**A.** At the end, a fool's mouth flows with wicked madness. [10:13]

---

**Q?** When is there trouble in the land?

**A.** There is trouble in the land if the king is young, and the leaders begin feasting in the morning! [10:16]

---

**Q?** Why does the house leak?

**A.** Because of idle hands the house leaks. [10:18]

---

**Q?** Why should people not curse the king?

**A.** People should not curse the king, for a bird of the sky might carry their words. [10:20]

---

## Ecclesiastes 11

**Q?** Why should people share bread with seven, even eight people?

**A.** People should share it with seven, even eight people, for they do not know what disasters are coming on the earth. [11:2]

---

**Q?** What can people not comprehend?

**A.** People cannot comprehend the work of God. [11:5]

---

**Q?** For how long should people plant seed?

**A.** People should plant seed in the morning until the evening. [11:6]

---

**Q?** What should people drive away from their heart?

**A.** People should drive anger away from their heart. [11:10]

---

## Ecclesiastes 12

**Q?** When should people call to mind their Creator?

**A.** People should call to mind their Creator in the days of their youth. [12:1]

---

**Q?** Why will women who grind cease?

**A.** The women who grind will cease because they are few. [12:3]

---

**Q?** At what will men be startled?

**A.** Men will be startled at the voice of a bird. [12:4]

---

**Q?** Where will the dust return?

**A.** The dust will return to the earth from where it came. [12:7]

---

**Q?** What did the Teacher teach people?

**A.** The Teacher taught the people knowledge. [12:9]

---

**Q?** Like what are the words of the wise?

**A.** The words of the wise are like goads. [12:11]

---

**Q?** What does much study bring?

**A.** Much study brings weariness to the body. [12:12]

---

**Q?** What is the end of the matter?

**A.** The end of the matter is that people must fear God and keep his commandments. [12:13]

---

## translationWords

### afflict, affliction

#### Definition:

The term “afflict” means to cause someone distress or suffering. An “affliction” is the disease, emotional grief, or other disaster that results from this.

- God afflicted his people with sickness or other hardships in order to cause them to repent of their sins and turn back to him.
- God caused afflictions or plagues to come on the people of Egypt because their king refused to obey God.
- To “be afflicted with” means to be suffering some kind of distress, such as a disease, persecution, or emotional grief.

#### Translation Suggestions:

- To afflict someone could be translated as “cause someone to experience troubles” or “cause someone to suffer” or “cause suffering to come.”
- In certain contexts “afflict” could be translated as “happen to” or “come to” or “bring suffering.”
- A phrase like, “afflict someone with leprosy” could be translated as, “cause someone to be sick with leprosy.”
- When a disease or disaster is sent to “afflict” people or animals, this could be translated as “cause suffering to.”
- Depending on the context, the term “affliction” could be translated as “calamity” or “sickness” or “suffering” or “great distress.” physical
- The phrase “afflicted with” could also be translated as, “suffering from” or “sick with.”

(See: [leprosy](#), [leper](#), [leprous](#), [plague](#), [suffer](#), [suffering](#))

#### Bible References:

Waiting

**age****Definition:**

The term “age” refers to the number of years a person has lived. It also used to refer generally to a time period.

- Other words used to express an extended period of time include, “era” and “season.”
- Jesus refers to “this age” as the present time when evil, sin, and disobedience fill the earth.
- There will be a future age when righteousness will reign over a new heaven and a new earth.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, the term “age” could also be translated as, “era” or “number of years old” or “time period” or “time.”
- The phrase, “at a very old age” could be translated as, “at many years old” or “when he was very old” or “when he had lived a very long time.”
- The phrase, “this present evil age” means, “during this time right now when people are very evil.”

**Bible References:**

Waiting

## **marvel, wonder, amazed, astonished**

### **Definition:**

All these terms refer to being very surprised because of something extraordinary that happened.

- Some of these words are translations of Greek expressions that mean “struck with amazement” or “standing outside of (oneself).” These expressions express how very surprised or shocked the person was feeling. Other languages might also have expressions to express this.
- Usually the event that caused the wonder and amazement was a miracle, something only God could do.
- The meaning of these terms can also include feelings of confusion because what happened was totally unexpected.
- Other ways to translate these words could be, “extremely surprised” or “very shocked.”
- Related words include: “marvelous” (amazing, wonderful), “amazement,” and “astonishment.”
- In general, these terms are positive and express that the people were happy about what had happened.

(See also: [miracle](#), [sign](#) )

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## amen, truly

### Definition:

The term “amen” is a word used to emphasize or call attention to what a person has said. It is often used at the end of a prayer. Sometimes it is translated as “truly.”

- When used at the end of a prayer, “amen” communicates agreement with the prayer or expresses a desire that the prayer be fulfilled.
- In his teaching, Jesus used “amen” to emphasize the truth of what he said. He often followed that by “and I say to you” to introduce another teaching that related to the previous teaching.
- When Jesus uses “amen” this way, some English versions (and the ULB) translate this as “verily” or “truly.”
- Another word meaning “truly” is sometimes translated as “surely” or “certainly” and is also used to emphasize what the speaker is saying.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Consider whether the target language has a special word or phrase that is used to emphasize something that has been said.
- When used at the end of a prayer or to confirm something, “amen” could be translated as, “let it be so” or “may this happen” or “that is true.”
- When Jesus says, “truly I tell you,” this could also be translated as, “Yes, I tell you sincerely” or “That is true, and I also tell you.”
- The phrase, “truly, truly I tell you” could be translated as “I tell you this very sincerely” or “I tell you this very earnestly” or “what I am telling you is true.”
- 

(See: [fulfill](#), [true](#), [truth](#), [come true](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## angry, anger

### Definition:

To “be angry” or to “have anger” means to be very displeased, irritated and upset about something or against someone.

- When people get angry, it often is sinful and selfish, but sometimes it is righteous anger against injustice or oppression.
- God’s anger (also called “wrath”) expresses his strong displeasure regarding sin.
- The phrase, “provoke to anger” means “cause to be angry.”

(See also: [wrath](#), [fury](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting



## anoint, anointed

### Definition:

The term “anoint” means to rub or pour oil on a person or object. Sometimes the oil was mixed with spices, giving it a sweet, perfumed smell. The term is also used figuratively to refer to the Holy Spirit choosing and empowering someone.

- In the Old Testament, priests, kings, and prophets were anointed with oil to set them apart for special service to God.
- Objects such as altars or the tabernacle, were also anointed with oil to show that they were to be used to worship and glorify God.
- In the New Testament, sick people were anointed with oil for their healing.
- The New Testament records two times that Jesus was anointed with perfumed oil by a woman, as an act of worship. One time Jesus commented that in doing this she was preparing him for his future burial.
- After Jesus died, his friends prepared his body for burial by anointing it with oils and spices.
- The titles “Messiah” (Hebrew) and “Christ” (Greek) mean “the Anointed (One).”
- Jesus the Messiah is the one who was chosen and anointed as a Prophet, High Priest, and King.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “anoint” could be translated as “pour oil on” or “put oil on” or “consecrate by pouring perfumed oil on.”
- To “be anointed” could be translated as “be consecrated with oil.” or “be appointed” or “be consecrated.”
- In some contexts the term “anoint” could be translated as “appoint.”
- A phrase like “the anointed priest,” could be translated as “the priest who was consecrated with oil” or “the priest who was set apart by the pouring on of oil.”

(See also: [Christ](#), [Messiah](#), [consecrate](#), [high priest](#), [King of the Jews](#), [priest](#), [priesthood](#), [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophecy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#) )

### Bible References:

Waiting

## **appoint, appointed**

### **Definition:**

The terms “appoint” and “appointed” refer to choosing someone to fulfill a specific task or role.

- To “be appointed” can also refer to being “chosen” to receive something, as in, “appointed to eternal life.” This means they were chosen to receive eternal life.
- The phrase “appointed time” refers to God’s “chosen time” or “planned time” for something to happen.
- The word “appoint” may also mean to “command” or “assign” someone to do something.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “appoint” could include, “choose” or “assign” or “formally choose” or “designate.”
- The term “appointed” could be translated as, “assigned” or “planned” or “specifically chose.”
- The phrase “be appointed” could also be translated as, “be chosen.”

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## **assign, assigned**

### **Facts:**

The term “assign” or “assigned” refers to appointing someone to do a specific task.

- The prophet Samuel foretold that King Saul would “assign” the best young men of Israel to serve in the military.
- Moses “assigned” each of the twelve tribes of Israel a portion of the land of Canaan for them to live on.
- Under the Old Testament law, certain tribes of Israel were assigned to serve as priests, artists, singers and builders.
- Depending on the context, “assign” could be translated as “give” or “appoint” or “choose for the task of.”
- The term “assigned” could be translated as “appointed” or “given the task.”

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [appoint](#), [appointed](#), [Samuel](#), [Saul \(OT\)](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## believe, believe in, belief

### Definition:

The terms “believe” and “believe in” are closely related, but have slightly different meanings:

#### 1. believe

- To believe something is to accept or trust that it is true.
- To believe someone is to acknowledge that what that person has said is true.

#### 2. believe in

- To “believe in” someone means to “trust in” that person. It means to trust that the person is who he says he is, that he always speaks the truth, and that he will do what he has promised to do.
- When a person truly believes in something, he will act in such a way that shows that belief.
- The phrase “have faith in” usually has the same meaning as “believe in.”
- To “believe in Jesus” means to believe that he is the Son of God, that he is God himself who also became human and who died as a sacrifice to pay for our sins. It means to trust him as Savior and live in a way that honors him.

### Translation Suggestions:

- To “believe” could be translated as to “know to be true” or “know to be right.”
- To “believe in” could be translated as, “trust completely” or “trust and obey” or “completely rely on and follow.”

(See also: [faith](#), [believer](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- [03-04] Noah warned the people about the coming flood and told them to turn to God, but they did not **believe** him.
- [04-08] Abram **believed** God’s promise. God declared that Abram was righteous because he **believed** God’s promise.
- [11-02] God provided a way to save the firstborn of anyone who **believed in** him.
- [11-06] But the Egyptians did not **believe** God or obey his commands.
- [37-05] Jesus replied, “I am the Resurrection and the Life. Whoever **believes in** me will live, even though he dies. Everyone who **believes in** me will never die. Do you **believe** this?”

## ble**ss**, ble**ss**ed, ble**ss**ing

### Definition:

To “bless” someone or something means to cause good and beneficial things to happen to the person or thing that is being blessed.

- Blessing someone also means expressing a desire for positive and beneficial things to happen to that person.
- In Bible times, a father would often pronounce a formal blessing on his children.
- When people ‘bless’ God or express a desire that God be blessed, this means they are praising him.
- The term “bless” is sometimes used for consecrating food before it is eaten, or for thanking and praising God for the food.

*from comment below: It is important to not define, focus on, or be confined by applications of the root word of “bless” that suggest primarily the flourishing or abundance of material things or physical wellness. Consider the extensive teachings in Scripture on God’s love, mercy and grace that is not only ancient, but current. Consider care, protection, and presence of God’s Spirit. And for us to bless God, we can offer thankfulness, appreciation, and understanding as we learn of and follow (obey) him.*

### Translation Suggestions:

- To “bless” could also be translated as, “to provide abundantly for” or “to be very kind and favorable toward.”
- “God has brought great blessing to” could be translated as, “God has given many good things to” or “God has provided abundantly for” or “God has caused many good things to happen to”.
- “He is blessed” could be translated as “he will greatly benefit” or “he will experience good things” or “God will cause him to flourish.”
- “Blessed is the person who” could be translated as “How good it is for the person who.”
- Expressions like, “blessed be the Lord” could be translated as, “May the Lord be praised” or “Praise the Lord” or “I praise the Lord.”
- In the context of blessing food, this could be translated as, “thanked God for the food” or “praised God for giving them food” or “consecrated the food by praising God for it.”

(See also: [praise](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **[01-07]** God saw that it was good and he **blessed** them.
- **[01-15]** God made Adam and Eve in his own image. He **blessed** them and told them, “Have many children and grandchildren and fill the earth.”
- **[01-16]** So God rested from all he had been doing. He **blessed** the seventh day and made it holy, because on this day he rested from his work.
- **[04-04]** “I will make your name great. I will **bless** those who **bless** you and curse those who curse you. All families on earth will be **blessed** because of you.”
- **[04-07]** Melchizedek **blessed** Abram and said, “May God Most High who owns heaven and earth **bless** Abram.”
- **[07-03]** Isaac wanted to give his **blessing** to Esau.
- **[08-05]** Even in prison, Joseph remained faithful to God, and God **blessed** him.

## bread

### Definition:

Bread is a food made from flour mixed with water and oil to form a dough. The dough is then shaped into a loaf and baked.

- When the term “loaf” occurs by itself, it means, “loaf of bread.”
- Bread dough is usually made with something that makes it rise, such as yeast.
- Bread can also be made without yeast so that it does not rise. In the Bible this is called “unleavened bread” and was used for the Jews’ passover meal.
- Since bread was the main food for many people in biblical times, this term is also used in the Bible to refer to food in general. (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- The term “bread of the presence” referred to twelve loaves of bread that were placed on a golden table in the tabernacle or temple building as a sacrifice to God. These loaves represented the twelve tribes of Israel and were only for the priests to eat. This could be translated as “bread showing that God lived among them.”
- The figurative term, “bread from heaven” referred to the special white food called “manna” that God provided for the Israelites when they were wandering through the desert.
- Jesus also called himself the “bread that came down from heaven” and the “bread of life.”
- When Jesus and his disciples were eating the Passover meal together before his death, he compared the unleavened Passover bread to his body which would be wounded and killed on a cross.
- Many times the term “bread” can be translated more generally as “food.”

(See also: [Passover](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#), [unleavened bread](#), [Festival of Unleavened Bread](#), [yeast](#), [leaven](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## breathe, breath

### Definition:

In the Bible, the terms “breathe” and “breath” are often used figuratively to refer to giving life or having life.

- The Bible teaches that God “breathed into” Adam the breath of life. It was at that point that Adam became a living soul.
- When Jesus breathed on the disciples and told them to “receive the Spirit,” he was probably literally breathing out air onto them to symbolize the Holy Spirit coming to them.
- Sometimes the terms “breathing” and “breathing out” are used to refer to speaking.
- The figurative expression “breath of God” or “breath of Yahweh” often refers to God’s wrath being poured out on rebellious or godless nations. It communicates his power.

### Translation Suggestions

- The expression “breathed his last” is a figurative way of saying “he died.” It could also be translated as, “he took his last breath” or “he stopped breathing and died” or “he breathed in air one last time.”
- Describing the Scriptures as “God-breathed” means that God spoke or inspired the words of the Scriptures which human authors then wrote down. It is probably best, if possible, to translate “God-breathed” somewhat literally since it is difficult to communicate the exact meaning of this.
- If a literal translation of “God-breathed” is not acceptable, other ways to translate this could include, “inspired by God” or “authored by God” or “spoken by God.” It could also be said that “God breathed out the words of Scripture.”
- The expressions “put breath in” or “breathe life into” or “gives breath to” could be translated as, “cause to breathe” or “make alive again” or “enable them to live and breathe” or “give life to.”
- If possible, it is best to translate “breath of God” with the literal word that is used for “breath” in the language. If God cannot be said to have “breath,” this could be translated as, “God’s power” or “God’s speech.”
- The expression “catch my breath” or “get my breath” could be translated as, “relax in order to breathe more slowly” or “stop running in order to breathe normally.”
- The expression “is only a breath” means “lasts a very short time.”
- Similarly the expression “man is a single breath” means “people live a very short time” or “the lives of human beings are very short, like a single breath” or “compared to God, the life of a person seems as short as the time it takes to breathe in one breath of air.”

(See also: [Adam](#), [Paul](#), [Saul](#), [word of God](#), [word of Yahweh](#), [word of the Lord](#), [scripture](#), [life](#), [live](#), [living](#), [alive](#))



**Bible References:**

Waiting

## **bribe**

### **Definition:**

To “bribe” means to give someone something of value, such as money, to influence that person to do something dishonest.

- The soldiers who guarded Jesus’ empty tomb were bribed with money to lie about what happened.
- Sometimes a government official will be bribed to overlook a crime or to vote a certain way.
- The Bible forbids giving or taking bribes.
- The term, “bribe” could be translated as “dishonest payment” or “payment for lying” or “price for breaking the rules.”
- “To bribe” could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “to pay to influence (someone)” or “to pay to have a dishonest favor done” or “to pay for a favor.”

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## brother

### Definition:

The term “brother” usually refers to a male person who shares at least one biological parent with another person.

- In the Old Testament, the term “brothers” is also used as a general reference to relatives, such as members of the same tribe, clan, or people group.
- In the New Testament, the apostles often used “brothers” to refer to fellow Christians, including both men and women, since all believers in Christ are members of one spiritual family, with God as their heavenly Father.
- A few times in the New Testament, the apostles used the term “sister” when referring specifically to a fellow Christian who was a woman, or to emphasize that both men and women are being included. For example, James emphasizes that he is talking about all believers when he refers to “a brother or sister who is in need of food or clothing.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term with the literal word that is used in the target language to refer to a natural or biological brother, unless this would give wrong meaning.
- In the Old Testament especially, when “brothers” is used very generally to refer to members of the same family, clan, or people group, possible translations could include, “relatives” or “clan members” or “fellow Israelites.”
- In the context of referring to a fellow believer in Christ, this term could be translated as, “brother in Christ” or “spiritual brother.”
- If both males and females are being referred to and “brother” would give a wrong meaning, then a more general kinship term could be used that would include both males and females.
- Other ways to translate this term so that it refers to both male and female believers could be, “fellow believers” or “Christian brothers and sisters.”
- Make sure to check the context to determine whether only men are being referred to, or whether both men and women are included.

(See also: [apostle](#), [the twelve](#), [the eleven](#), [God the Father](#), [Heavenly Father](#), [sister](#), [spirit](#), [spiritual](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## **burden**

### **Definition:**

A burden is a heavy load. It literally refers to a physical load such as a work animal would carry. The term “burden” also has several figurative meanings:

- A burden can refer to a difficult duty or important responsibility that a person has to do. He is said to be “bearing” or “carrying” a “heavy burden.”
- A cruel leader may put difficult burdens on the people he is ruling, for example by forcing them to pay large amounts of taxes.
- A person who does not want to be a burden to someone does not want to cause that other person any trouble.
- The guilt of a person’s sin is a burden to him.
- The “burden of the Lord” is a figurative way of referring to a “message from God” that a prophet must deliver to God’s people.
- The term “burden” can be translated by “responsibility” or “duty” or “heavy load” or “message,” depending on the context.

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## **bury, buried, burial**

### **Definition:**

The term “bury” usually refers to putting a dead body into a hole or other burial place. The term “burial” is the act of burying something or can be used to describe a place used to bury something.

- Often people bury a dead body by placing it into a deep hole in the ground and then covering it with dirt.
- Sometimes the dead body is placed in a box-like structure, such as a coffin before burying it.
- In Bible times, dead people were often buried in a cave or similar place. After Jesus died, his body was wrapped in cloths and placed in a stone tomb that was sealed with a large boulder.
- The terms “burial place” or “burial room” or “burial chamber” or “burial cave” are all ways to refer to a place where a dead body is buried.
- Other things can also be buried, such as when Achan buried silver and other things that he had stolen from Jericho.
- The phrase “buried his face” usually means, “covered his face with his hands.”
- Sometimes the word “hide” can mean “bury” as when Achan hid things in the ground that he had stolen from Jericho. This meant he buried them in the ground.

(See also: [Jericho](#), [tomb](#), [grave](#), [burial place](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## call, calling, called, call out

### Definition:

The terms “call” and “call out” literally means to say something loudly to someone who is not nearby. There are also several figurative meanings.

- To “call out” to someone means to shout or speak loudly to someone far away. It can also mean to ask someone for help, especially God.
- Often in the Bible, “call” has a meaning of “summon” or “command to come” or “request to come.”
- God calls people to come to him and be his people. This is their “calling.”
- The term “called” is used in the Bible to mean that God has appointed or chosen people to be his children, to be his servants and proclaimers of his message of salvation through Jesus.
- This term is also used in the context of calling someone a name. For example, “He is called John,” means, “He is named John” or “His name is John.”
- To be “called by the name of” means that someone is given the name of someone else. God says that he has called his people by his name.
- A different expression, “I have called you by name” means that God knows a person’s name personally and has specifically chosen him.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “call” could be translated by a word that means “summon,” which includes the idea of being intentional or purposeful in calling.
- The expression “call out to you” could be translated as “ask you for help” or “pray to you urgently.”
- When the Bible says that God has “called” us to be his servants, this could be translated as, “specially chose us” or “appointed us” to be his servants.
- “You must call his name” can also be translated as, “you must name him.”
- “His name is called” could also be translated as, “his name is” or “he is named.”
- To “call out” could be translated as, “say loudly” or “shout” or “say with a loud voice.” Make sure the translation of this does not sound like the person is angry.
- The expression “your calling” could be translated as “your purpose” or “God’s purpose for you” or “God’s special work for you.”
- To “call on the name of the Lord” could be translated as “seek the Lord and depend on him” or “trust in the Lord and obey him.”
- To “call for” something could be translated by “demand” or “ask for” or “command.”
- The expression “you are called by my name” could be translated as, “I have given you my name, showing that you belong to me.”
- When God says, “I have called you by name,” this could be translated as, “I know your name and have chosen you.”

(See: [pray, prayer](#) )

**Bible References:**

Waiting

{{tag>publish ktlink}}

## clean, cleanse

### Definition:

The term “clean” literally means to not have any dirt or stain. In the Bible, it is often used figuratively to mean, “pure,” “holy,” or “free from sin.”

- “Cleanse” is the process of making something “clean.” It could also be translated as “wash” or “purify.”
- In the Old Testament, God told the Israelites which animals he had specified as ritually “clean” and which ones were “unclean.” Only the clean animals were permitted to be used for eating or for sacrifice. In this context, the term “clean” means that the animal was acceptable to God for use as a sacrifice.
- A person who had certain skin diseases would be unclean until the skin was healed enough to no longer be contagious. Instructions for cleansing the skin had to be obeyed in order for that person to be declared “clean” again.
- Sometimes “clean” is used figuratively to refer to moral purity.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated with the common word for “clean” or “pure” (in the sense of being not dirty).
- Other ways to translate this could include, “ritually clean” or “acceptable to God.”
- “Cleanse” could be translated by “wash” or “purify.”
- Make sure that the words used for “clean” and “cleanse” can also be understood in a figurative sense.

(See also: [holy](#), [holiness](#), [unclean](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#) )

### Bible References:

Waiting



## comfort, comforter

### Definition:

The terms “comfort” and “comforter” refer to helping someone who is suffering physical or emotional pain.

- A person who comforts someone is called a “comforter.”
- In the Old Testament, the term “comfort” is used to describe how God is kind and loving to his people and helps them when they are suffering.
- In the New Testament, it says that God will comfort his people through the Holy Spirit. Those who receive the comfort are then enabled to give the same comfort to others who are suffering.
- The expression “comforter of Israel” referred to the Messiah who would come to rescue his people.
- Jesus referred to the Holy Spirit as the “Comforter” who helps believers in Jesus.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “comfort” could also be translated as, “ease the pain of” or “help (someone) overcome grief” or “encourage” or “console.”
- A phrase such as “our comfort” could be translated as “our encouragement” or “our consoling of (someone)” or “our help in times of grieving.”
- The term “comforter” could be translated as “person who comforts” or “someone who helps ease pain” or “person who encourages.”
- When the Holy Spirit is called “the Comforter” this could also be translated as “the Encourager” or “the Helper” or “the One who helps and guides.”
- The phrase “comforter of Israel” could be translated as, “the Messiah, who comforts Israel.”
- An expression like, “they have no comforter” could also be translated as, “No one has comforted them” or “There is no one to encourage or help them.”

(See also: [encourage](#), [encouragement](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## **command, to command, commandment**

### **Definition:**

The term “to command” means to order someone to do something. A “command” or “commandment” is what the person was ordered to do.

- Although these terms have basically the same meaning, “commandment” often refers to certain commands of God which are more formal and permanent, such as the “Ten Commandments.”
- A command can be positive (“Honor your parents”) or negative (“Do not steal”).
- To “take command” means to “take control” or “take charge” of something or someone.

### **Translation Suggestions**

- It is best to translate this term differently from the term, “law.” Also compare with the definitions of “decree” and “statute.”
- Some translators may prefer to translate “command” and “commandment” with the same word in their language.
- Others may prefer to use a special word for commandment that refers to lasting, formal commands that God has made.

(See [decree](#), [statute](#), [statutes](#), [law](#), [principle](#), [Ten Commandments](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

**concubine****Definition:**

A concubine is a woman who is a secondary wife for a man who already has a wife. Usually a concubine is not legally married to the man.

- In the Old Testament, concubines were often female slaves.
- A concubine could be acquired by purchase, through military conquest, or in payment of a debt.
- For a king, having many concubines was a sign of power.often
- The New Testament teaches that the practice of having a concubine is against God's will.

**Bible References:**

Waiting

## consume

### Definition:

The term “consume” literally means to use up something. It has several figurative meanings.

- In the Bible, the word “consume” often refers to destroying things or people.
- A fire is said to consume things, which means it destroys them by burning them up.
- God is described as a “consuming fire,” which is a description of his anger against sin. His anger results in terrible punishment for sinners who do not repent.
- To consume food means to eat or drink something.
- The phrase, “consume the land” could be translated as “destroy the land.”

### Translation Suggestions

- In the context of consuming the land or people, this term could be translated as “destroy.”
- When fire is referred to, “consume” could be translated as “burn up.”
- The burning bush that Moses saw “was not consumed” which could be translated as, “did not get burned up” or “did not burn up.”
- When referring to eating, “consume” could be translated as “eat” or “devour.”
- If someone’s strength is “consumed,” it means his strength is “used up” or “gone.”
- The expression, “God is a consuming fire” could be translated as, “God is like a fire that burns things up” or “God is angry against sin and will destroy sinners like a fire.”

(See: [devour](#), [wrath](#), [fury](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## **corrupt, corruption**

### **Definition:**

The terms “corrupt” and “corruption” refer to a state of affairs in which people have become ruined, immoral, or dishonest.

- The term “corrupt” literally means to be “bent” or “broken” morally.
- A person who is corrupt has turned away from truth and is doing things that are dishonest or immoral.
- To corrupt someone means to influence that person to do dishonest and immoral things.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- The term “to corrupt” could be translated as “to influence to do evil” or “to cause to be immoral.”
- A corrupt person could be described as a person “who has become immoral” or “who practices evil.”
- This term could also be translated as “bad” or “immoral” or “evil.”
- The term corruption could be translated as “the practice of evil” or “evil” or “immorality.”

(See also: [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

**counsel, counselor, advice, advisor****Definition:**

The terms “counsel” and “advice” have the same meaning and refer to helping someone decide wisely about what to do in a certain situation. A wise “counselor” or “advisor” is someone who gives advice or counsel that will help a person make right choices.

- Kings often have official advisors or counselors to help them decide important matters that affect the people they are ruling.
- Sometimes the advice or counsel that is given is not good. Evil advisors may urge a king to take action or make a decree that will harm him or his people.
- Depending on the context, “advice” or “counsel” could also be translated as “help in deciding” or “warnings” or “exhortations” or “guidance.”
- The action, “to counsel” could be translated as “to advise” or “to make suggestions” or “to exhort.”
- Note that “counsel” is a different word than “council,” which refers to a group of people.

(See also: [exhort](#), [exhortation](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [wise](#), [wisdom](#))

**Bible References:**

Waiting

## create, creation, Creator

### Definition:

The term “create” means to make something, or to cause something to be. Whatever is created is called a “creation.” God is called the “Creator” because he caused everything in the entire universe to come into existence.

- When this term is used to refer to God creating the world, it means he made it out of nothing.
- When human beings “create” something, it means they made it out of things that already existed.
- Sometimes “create” is used in a figurative way to describe something abstract, such as creating peace or creating a pure heart in someone.
- The term “creation” can refer to the very beginning of the world when God first created everything. It can also be used to refer generally to everything that God created. Sometimes the word “creation” refers more specifically to just the people in the world.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Some languages may have to directly say that God created the world “out of nothing” to make sure this meaning is clear.
- The phrase, “since the creation of the world” means, “since the time when God created the world.”
- A similar phrase, “at the beginning of creation” could be translated as, “when God created the world at the beginning of time” or “when the world was first created.”
- To preach the good news “to all creation” means to preach the good news “to all people everywhere on earth.”
- The phrase, “Let all creation rejoice” means, “Let everything that God created rejoice.”
- Depending on the context, “create” could be translated as, “make” or “cause to be” or “make out of nothing.”
- The term “the Creator” could be translated as, “the One who created everything” or “God, who made the whole world.”
- Phrases like “your Creator” could be translated as, “God, who created you.”

(See: [God](#), [good news](#), [gospel](#), [world](#))

### Bible References:

se, “since the creation of the world” means, “since the time when God created the world was created.

Waiting

## **crime, criminal**

### **Definition:**

The term “crime” usually refers to a sin that involves breaking the law of a country or state. The term “criminal” refers to someone who has committed a crime.

- Types of crimes include such things as killing a person or stealing someone’s property.
- A criminal is usually captured and kept in some form of captivity such as a prison.
- In Bible times, some criminals became fugitives, wandering from place to place to escape people who wanted to harm them out of revenge for their crime.

(See also: [fugitive](#), [thief](#), [thieves](#), [robber](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting



## curse, cursed

### Definition:

The term “curse” means to cause negative things to happen to the person or thing that is being cursed.

- A curse can be a statement that harm will happen to someone or something.
- To curse someone can also be an expression of desire that bad things will happen to them.
- It can also refer to the punishment or other negative things that someone causes to happen to someone.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated as “cause bad things to happen to” or “declare that something bad will happen to” or “swear to cause evil things to happen to.”
- In the context of God sending curses on his disobedient people, it could be translated as, “punish by allowing bad things to happen.”
- The term “cursed” when used to describe people could be translated as, “(this person) will experience much trouble.”
- The phrase “cursed be” could be translated as, “May (this person) experience great difficulties.”
- The phrase, “Cursed is the ground” could be translated as, “The soil will not be very fertile.”
- “Cursed be the day I was born” could also be translated as, “I am so miserable it would have been better not to be born.”
- However, if the target language has the phrase “cursed be” and it has the same meaning, then it is good to keep the same phrase.

(See also: [bless](#), [blessed](#), [blessing](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- [02-09] God said to the snake, “You are **cursed!**”
- [02-11] “Now the ground is **cursed**, and you will need to work hard to grow food.”
- [04-04] “I will bless those who bless you and **curse** those who **curse** you.”
- [39-07] Then Peter vowed, saying, “May God **curse** me if I know this man!”
- [50-16] Because Adam and Eve disobeyed God and brought sin into this world, God **cursed** it and decided to destroy it.

## darkness

### Definition:

The term “darkness” literally means an absence of light. There are also several figurative meanings of this term:

- As a metaphor, “darkness” means “impurity” or “evil” or “spiritual blindness.”
- It also refers to anything related to sin and moral corruption.
- The expression, “dominion of darkness” refers to all that is evil and ruled by Satan.
- The term “darkness” can also be used as a metaphor for death. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- People who do not know God are said to be “living in darkness,” which means they do not understand or practice righteousness.
- God is light (righteousness) and the darkness (evil) cannot overcome that light.
- The place of punishment for those who reject God is sometimes referred to as “outer darkness.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term literally, with a word in the project language that refers to the absence of light. This could also be a term that refers to the darkness of a room with no light or to the time of day when there is no light.
- For the figurative uses, it is also important to keep the image of darkness in contrast to light, as a way to describe evil and deception in contrast to goodness and truth.
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could be, “darkness of night” (as opposed to “light of day”) or “not seeing anything, like at night” or “evil, like a dark place”.

(See also: [corrupt](#), [corruption](#), [dominion](#), [kingdom](#), [light](#), [redeem](#), [redemption](#), [righteous](#), [righteousness](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## David

### Facts:

David was the second king of Israel and he loved and served God. He was the main writer of the book of Psalms.

- When David was still a young boy caring for his family's sheep, God chose him to become the next king of Israel.
- David became a great fighter and led the Israelite army in battles against their enemies. His defeat of Goliath the Philistine is well-known.
- King Saul tried to kill David, but God protected him, and made him king after Saul's death.
- David committed a terrible sin, but he repented and God forgave him.
- Jesus, the Messiah, is called the "Son of David" because he is a descendant of King David.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Goliath](#), [Philistines](#), [Saul \(OT\)](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[17-02]** God chose a young Israelite named **David** to be king after Saul. **David** was a shepherd from the town of Bethlehem. ... **David** was a humble and righteous man who trusted and obeyed God.
- **[17-03]** **David** was also a great soldier and leader. When **David** was still a young man, he fought against a giant named Goliath.
- **[17-04]** Saul became jealous of the people's love for **David**. Saul tried many times to kill him, so **David** hid from Saul.
- **[17-05]** God blessed **David** and made him successful. **David** fought many battles and God helped him defeat Israel's enemies.
- **[17-06]** **David** wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him sacrifices.
- **[17-09]** **David** ruled with justice and faithfulness for many years, and God blessed him. However, toward the end of his life he sinned terribly against God.
- **[17-13]** God was very angry about what **David** had done, so he sent the prophet Nathan to tell **David** how evil his sin was. **David** repented of his sin and God forgave him. For the rest of his life, **David** followed and obeyed God, even in difficult times.

## death, die, dead

### Definition:

This term is used to refer to both physical and spiritual death. Physically, it refers to when the physical body of a person stops living. Spiritually, it refers to sinners being separated from a holy God because of their sin.

### 1. Physical death

- To “die” means to stop living. Death is the end of physical life.
- A person’s spirit leaves his body when he dies.
- When Adam and Eve sinned, physical death came into the world.
- The expression “put to death” refers to killing or murdering someone, especially when a king or other ruler gives an order for someone to be killed.

### 2. Spiritual death

- Spiritual death is the separation of a person from God.
- Adam died spiritually when he disobeyed God. His relationship with God was broken. He became ashamed and tried to hide from God.
- Every descendant of Adam is a sinner, and is spiritually dead. God makes us spiritually alive again when we have faith in Jesus Christ.

### Translation Suggestions:

- To translate this term, it is best to use the everyday, natural word or expression that refers to death in the target language.
- In some languages, “to die” may be expressed as “to not live.” The term “dead” may be translated as “not alive” or “not having any life” or “not living.”
- Many languages use figurative expressions to describe death, such as “to pass away” in English. However in the Bible it is best to use the most direct term for death that is used in everyday language.
- In the Bible, physical life and death are often compared to spiritual life and death. It is important in a translation to use the same word or phrase for both physical death and spiritual death.
- In some languages it may be more clear to say “spiritual death” when the context requires that meaning. Some translators may also feel it is best to say “physical death” in contexts where it is being contrasted to spiritual death.
- The expression, “the dead” is a nominal adjective that refers to people who have died. Some languages will translate this as, “dead people” or “people who have died.” (See: nominal adjective)
- The expression, “put to death” could also be translated as, “kill” or “murder” or “execute.”

(See also: [believe](#), [believe in](#), [belief](#), [faith](#), [life](#), [live](#), [living](#), [alive](#), [spirit](#), [spiritual](#))

**Bible References:**

Waiting

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **[01-11]** God told Adam that he could eat from any tree in the garden except from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil. If he ate from this tree, he would **die**.
- **[02-11]** "Then you will **die**, and your body will return to dirt."
- **[07-10]** Then Isaac **died**, and Jacob and Esau buried him.
- **[37-05]** "Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the Life. Whoever believes in me will live, even though he **dies**. Everyone who believes in me will never **die**."
- **[40-08]** Through his **death**, Jesus opened a way for people to come to God.
- **[43-07]** "Although Jesus **died**, God raised him from the dead."
- **[48-02]** Because they sinned, everyone on earth gets sick and everyone **dies**.
- **[50-17]** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or **death**.
-

## descendant, descended from

### Definition:

A “descendant” is someone who is a direct blood relative of someone else further back in history.

- For example, Abraham was a descendant of Noah.
- A person’s descendants are his children, grandchildren, great-great-grandchildren, and so on. Jacob’s descendants were the twelve tribes of Israel.
- The phrase “descended from” is another way of saying “a descendant of” as in, “Abraham was descended from Noah.” This could also be translated as, “from the family line of.”

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Abram](#), [ancestor](#), [father](#), [forefather](#), [Jacob](#), [Israel](#), [Noah](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- [02-09] ”The woman’s **descendant** will crush your head, and you will wound his heel.”
- [04-09] ”I give the land of Canaan to your **descendants**.”
- [05-10] ”Your **descendants** will be more than the stars in the sky.”
- [17-07] ”Someone from your family will always rule as king over Israel, and the Messiah will be one of your **descendants!**”
- [18-13] The kings of Judah were **descendants** of David.
- [21-04] God promised King David that the Messiah would be one of David’s own **descendants**.
- [48-13] God promised David that the Messiah would be one of his **descendants**. Jesus, the Messiah, was that special **descendant** of David.

## **destiny, destine, destined**

### **Definition:**

The term “destiny” refers to what will happen to people in the future. If someone is “destined” to do something, it means that what that person will do in the future has been decided by God.

- When God “destines” a nation for wrath, this means that he has decided or chosen to punish that nation because of their sin.
- Judas was “destined” for destruction, which means that God had decided that Judas would be destroyed because of his rebellion.
- Every person has a final, eternal destiny, either in heaven or in hell.
- When the writer of Ecclesiastes says that everyone’s destiny is the same, he means that all people eventually die.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- The phrase “destine you for wrath” could also be translated as, “decided that you will be punished” or “determined that you will experience my wrath.”
- The figurative expression, “they are destined for the sword” could be translated as, “God has decided that they will be destroyed by enemies who will kill them with swords” or “God has determined that their enemies will kill them with swords.”
- The phrase, “you are destined for,” could be translated using a phrase like, “God has decided that you will be.”
- Depending on the context, “destiny” could be translated as “final end” or “what will happen in the end” or “what God has decided will happen.”

(See also: [captive](#), [captivity](#), [everlasting](#), [eternal](#), [eternity](#), [heaven](#), [sky](#), [heavens](#), [heavenly](#), [hell](#), [lake of fire](#), [John \(the Baptist\)](#), [repent](#), [repentance](#).)

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## **dream**

### **Definition:**

A dream is something that people see or experience in their minds while they are sleeping.

- Dreams often seem like they are really happening, but they are not.
- Sometimes God causes people to dream about something so they can learn from it. He may also speak directly to people in their dreams.
- In the Bible, God gave special dreams to certain people to give them a message, often about something that would happen in the future.
- A dream is different from a vision. Dreams happen while a person is asleep, but visions usually happen when a person is awake.

(See also: [vision](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

### **Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **[08-02]** Joseph's brothers hated him because their father loved him most and because Joseph had **dreamed** that he would be their ruler.
- **[08-06]** One night, the Pharaoh, which is what the Egyptians called their kings, had two **dreams** that disturbed him greatly. None of his advisors could tell him the meaning of the **dreams**.
- **[08-07]** God had given Joseph the ability to interpret **dreams**, so Pharaoh had Joseph brought to him from the prison. Joseph interpreted the **dreams** for him and said, "God is going to send seven years of plentiful harvests followed by seven years of famine."
- **[16-11]** So that night, Gideon went down to the camp and heard a Midianite soldier telling his friend about something he had **dreamed**. The man's friend said, "This **dream** means that Gideon's army will defeat the Midianite army!"
- **[23-01]** He (Joseph) did not want to shame her (Mary), so he planned to quietly divorce her. Before he could do that, an angel came and spoke to him in a **dream**.



## **drunk, drunkard**

### **Facts:**

The term “drunk” means to be intoxicated from drinking too much of an alcoholic beverage.

- A “drunkard” is a person who is often drunk. This kind of person could also be referred to as an “alcoholic.”
- The Bible tells believers not to be drunk with alcoholic drinks, but to be controlled by God’s Holy Spirit.
- The Bible teaches that drunkenness is unwise and influences a person to sin in other ways.
- Other ways to translate “drunk” could include, “inebriated” or “intoxicated” or “having too much alcohol” or “filled with fermented drink.”

(See also: [wine](#), [wineskin](#), [new wine](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## earth, earthly

### Definition:

The term “earth” refers to the world that human beings live on, along with all other forms of life.

- “Earth” can also refer to the ground or soil that covers the land.
- This term is often used figuratively to refer to the people who live on the earth. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- The expressions, “let the earth be glad” and “He will judge the earth” are examples of figurative uses of this term.
- The term “earthly” usually refers to physical things in contrast to spiritual things.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term can be translated by the word or phrase that the local language or nearby national languages use to refer to the planet earth on which we live.
- Depending on the context, “earth” could also be translated as, “world” or “land” or “dirt” or “soil.”
- When used figuratively, “earth” could be translated as, “people on the earth” or “people living on earth” or “everything on earth.”
- Ways to translate “earthly” could include, “physical” or “things of this earth” or “visible.”

(See also: [spirit](#), [spiritual](#), [world](#), [worldly](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## envy, covet

### Definition:

The term “envy” refers to being jealous of someone because of what that person possesses or because of that person’s admirable qualities. The term “covet” means to envy someone to the point of strongly desiring to have something that person has.

- Envy is normally a negative feeling of resentment because of another person’s success, good fortune, or possessions.
- Coveting is a strong desire to have someone else’s property, or even, someone else’s spouse.

(See also: [jealous](#), [jealousy](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## everlasting, eternal, eternity

### Definition:

The terms “everlasting” and “eternal” have very similar meanings and refer to something that will always exist or that lasts forever.

- The term “eternity” refers to a state of being that has no beginning or end. It can also refer to life that never ends.
- After this present life on earth, humans will spend eternity either in heaven with God or in hell apart from God.
- The terms “eternal life” and “everlasting life” are used in the New Testament to refer to living forever with God in heaven.
- The phrase “forever and ever” has the idea of time that never ends and expresses what eternity or eternal life is like.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “eternal” or “everlasting” could include, “unending” or “never stopping” or “always continuing.”
- The terms “eternal life” and “everlasting life” could also be translated as “life that never ends” or “life that continues without stopping” or “the raising up of our bodies to live forever.”
- Depending on the context, different ways to translate “eternity” could include, “existing outside of time” or “unending life” or “life in heaven.”
- Also consider how this word is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [forever](#), [life](#), [live](#), [living](#), [alive](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[27-01]** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, “Teacher, what must I do to inherit **eternal life**?”
- **[28-01]** One day, a rich young ruler came up to Jesus and asked him, “Good Teacher, what must I do to have **eternal life**?” Jesus said to him, “Why do you ask me about what is good? There is only One who is good, and that is God. But if you want to have **eternal life**, obey God’s laws.”
- **[28-10]** Jesus answered, “Everyone who has left houses, brothers, sisters, father, mother, children, or property for my name’s sake, will receive 100 times more and will also receive **eternal life**.”

## evil, wicked, wickedness

### Definition:

The terms “evil” and “wicked” both refer to anything that is opposed to God’s holy character and will.

- While “evil” may describe a person’s character, “wicked” may refer more to a person’s behavior. However, both terms are very similar in meaning.
- The term “wickedness” refers to the state of being that exists when people do wicked things.
- The results of evil are clearly shown in how people mistreat others by killing, stealing, slandering or being cruel and unkind.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the terms “evil” and “wicked” can be translated as “bad” or “sinful” or “immoral”
- Other ways to translate these could include, “not good” or “not righteous” or “not moral.”
- Make sure the words or phrases that are used to translate these terms fit the context that is natural in the target language.

(See also: [disobey](#), [disobedient](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [good](#), [goodness](#), [righteous](#), demon, evil spirit, unclean spirit)

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[02-04]** “God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand good and **evil** like he does.”
- **[03-01]** After a long time, many people were living in the world. They had become very **wicked** and violent.
- **[03-02]** But Noah found favor with God. He was a righteous man living among **wicked** people.
- **[04-02]** God saw that if they all kept working together to do **evil**, they could do many more sinful things.
- **[08-12]** “You tried to do **evil** when you sold me as a slave, but God used the **evil** for good!”
- **[14-02]** They (Canaanites) worshiped false gods and did many **evil** things.
- **[17-01]** But then he (Saul) became a **wicked** man who did not obey God, so God chose a different man who would one day be king in his place.
- **[18-11]** In the new kingdom of Israel, all the kings were **evil**.

- [29-08] The king was so angry that he threw the **wicked** servant into prison until he could pay back all of his debt.
- [45-02] They said, "We heard him (Stephen) speak **evil** things about Moses and God!"
- [50-17] He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, **evil**, pain, or death.

## face

### Definition:

The word “face” literally refers to the front part of a person’s head. This term also has several figurative meanings.

- The expression “your face” is often a figurative way of saying “you.” Similarly, the expression “my face” often means, “I” or “me.”
- In a physical sense, “to face” someone or something means to look in the direction of that person or thing.
- To “face each other” means to “look directly at each other.”
- Being “face to face” means that two people are seeing each other in person, at a close distance.
- When Jesus “steadfastly set his face to go to Jerusalem,” it means that he very firmly decided to go.
- To “set one’s face against” people or a city means to firmly decide: to no longer support, or to reject that city or person.
- The expression “face of the land” refers to the surface of the earth and often is a general reference to the whole earth. For example, a “famine covering the face of the earth” refers to a widespread famine that affected many people living on earth.
- The figurative expression, “do not hide your face from your people” means “do not reject your people” or “do not desert your people” or “do not stop taking care of your people.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- If possible, it is best to keep the expression or use an expression in the project language that has a similar meaning.
- The term “to face” could be translated as “to turn toward” or “to look at directly” or “to look at the face of.”
- The expression “face to face” could be translated as “up close” or “right in front of” or “in the presence of.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “before his face” could be translated as, “ahead of him” or “in front of him” or “before him” or “in his presence.”
- The expression, “set his face toward” could be translated as “began traveling toward” or “firmly made up his mind to go to.”
- The expression, “hide his face from” could be translated as, “turn away from” or “stop helping or protecting” or “reject.”
- To “set his face against” a city or people could be translated as, “look at with anger and condemn” or “refuse to accept” or “decide to reject” or “condemn and reject” or “pass judgment on.”
- The expression, “say it to their face” could be translated as, “say it to them directly” or “say it to them in their presence” or “say it to them in person.”
- The expression, “on the face of the land” could also be translated as, “throughout the land” or “over the whole earth” or “living throughout the earth.”

**Bible References:**

Waiting



## false god, foreign god, god, goddess

### Definition:

A false god is something that people worship instead of the one true God. The term “goddess” refers specifically to a female false god.

- These false gods or goddesses do not exist. Yahweh is the only God.
- People sometimes make objects into idols to worship as symbols of their false gods.
- In the Bible, God’s people frequently turned away from obeying him in order to worship false gods.
- Demons often deceive people into believing that the false gods and idols they worship have power.
- Baal, Dagon, and Molech were three of the many false gods that were worshiped by people in Bible times.
- Asherah and Artemis (Diana) were two of the goddesses that ancient peoples worshiped.

### Translation Suggestions:

- There may already be a word for “god” or “false god” in the language or in a nearby language.
- The term “idol” could be used to refer to false gods.
- In English, a lower case “g” is used to refer to false gods, and upper case “G” is used to refer to the one true God. Other languages also do that.
- Another option would be to use a completely different word to refer to the false gods.
- Some languages may add a word to specify whether the false god is described as male or female.

(See also: [God](#), [Asherah](#), [Asherah poles](#), [Ashtoreth](#), [Baal](#), [Molech](#), [Moloch](#), [idol](#), [idolatrous](#), [demon](#), [evil spirit](#), [unclean spirit](#), [image](#), [carved image](#), [carved figure](#), [cast metal figure](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[10-02]** Through these plagues, God showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt’s **gods**.
- **[13-04]** Then God gave them the covenant and said, “I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other **gods**.”
- **[14-02]** They (Canaanites) worshiped false **gods** and did many evil things.
- **[16-01]** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite **gods** instead of Yahweh, the true God.
- **[18-13]** But most of Judah’s kings were evil, corrupt, and they worshiped idols. Some of the kings even sacrificed their children to false **gods**.

## **favor, favorable, favoritism**

### **Definition:**

The term “favor” refers to doing something to benefit someone who is regarded positively. Something that is “favorable” is positive, approving, or beneficial.

- The term “favoritism” means to act favorably toward some people but not others. Often favoritism is The term “favoritism” means acting favorably toward some people, but not others. shown toward people who are rich or are considered
- Jesus grew up “in favor with” God and men. This means they approved of his character and behavior.
- The expression “find favor” means that someone is approved of by someone else.
- When a king shows favor to someone, it often means that he approves of that person’s request and grants it.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Other ways to translate the term “favor” could include, “blessing” or “benefit.”
- The “favorable year of Yahweh” could be translated as, “the year (or time) when Yahweh will bring great blessing.”
- The term “favoritism” could be translated as, “partiality” or “being prejudiced” or “unjust treatment.” This word is related to the word “favorite” which means “the one who is preferred or loved best.”

“find favor” “increased in favor” “won the favor of”

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## **fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh**

### **Definition:**

The terms “fear” and “afraid” refer to the unpleasant feeling a person has when there is a threat of harm to himself or others.

- The term “fear” can also refer to a deep respect and awe for a person in authority.
- The phrase “fear of Yahweh,” and related terms “fear of God” and “fear of the Lord,” refer to deeply respecting God and showing that respect by obeying him. This fear is motivated by knowing that God is holy and hates sin.
- The Bible teaches that a person who fears Yahweh will become wise.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, “to fear” can be translated as “to be afraid” or “to deeply respect” or “to revere” or “to be in awe of.”
- The term “afraid” could be translated as “terrified” or “scared” or “fearful.”
- The sentence, “The fear of God fell on all of them” could be translated as, “Suddenly they all felt a deep awe and respect for God” or “Immediately, they all felt very amazed and revered God deeply” or “Right then, they all felt very afraid of God (because of his great power).”
- The phrase “fear not” could also be translated as, “do not be afraid” or “stop being afraid.”
- Note that the phrase “fear of Yahweh” does not occur in the New Testament. The phrase “fear of the Lord” or “fear of the Lord God” would be used instead.

(See also: [marvel](#), [wonder](#), [amazed](#), [astonished](#), [awe](#), [awesome](#), [Lord](#), [power](#), [powers](#), [Yahweh](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## feast

### Definition:

The term “feast” refers to an event where a group of people eat a very large meal together, often for the purpose of celebrating something. The action “to feast” means to eat a large amount of food or to participate in eating a feast together.

- Often there are special kinds of food that are eaten at a certain feast.
- The religious festivals that God commanded the Jews to celebrate usually included having a feast together. For this reason the festivals are often called “feasts.”
- In Bible times, kings and other rich and powerful people often gave feasts to entertain their family or friends.
- In the story about the lost son, the father had a special feast prepared to celebrate the return of his son.
- A feast sometimes lasted for several days or more.
- The term “to feast” could also be translated as “to eat lavishly” or “to celebrate by eating lots of food” or “to eat a special, large meal.”
- Depending on the context, “feast” could be translated as, “celebrating together with a large meal” or “a meal with a lot of food” or “a celebration meal.”

(See also: [festival](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## flesh

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “flesh” literally refers to the soft tissue of the physical body of a human being or animal.

- The Bible also uses the term “flesh” in a figurative way to refer to all human beings or all living creatures.
- In the New Testament, the term “flesh” is used to refer to the sinful nature of human beings. This is often used in contrast to their spiritual nature.
- The expression, “own flesh and blood” refers to someone who is biologically related to another person, such as a parent, sibling, child, or grandchild.
- The expression “flesh and blood” can also refer to a person’s ancestors or descendants.
- The expression, “one flesh” refers to the physical uniting of a man and woman in marriage.

### Translation Suggestions:

- In the context of an animal’s body, “flesh” could be translated as “body” or “skin” or “meat.”
- When it is used to refer generally to all living creatures, this term could be translated as “living beings” or “everything that is alive.”
- When referring in general to all people, this term could be translated as “people” or “human beings” or “everyone who lives.”
- The expression, “flesh and blood” could also be translated as “relatives” or “family” or “kin-folk” or “family clan.” There may be contexts where it could be translated as “ancestors” or “descendants.”
- Some languages may have an expression that is similar in meaning to “flesh and blood.”
- The expression, “become one flesh” could be translated as, “unite sexually” or “become as one body” or “become like one person in body and spirit.” The translation of this expression should be checked to make sure it is acceptable in the project language and culture. (See: [Euphemism](#)). It should also be understood that this is figurative, and does not mean that the man and woman literally become one person.

### Bible References:

Waiting

**flock, herd****Definition:**

In the Bible, “flock” refers to a group of sheep or goats and “herd” refers to a group of cattle, oxen, or pigs.

- Different languages may have different ways of naming groups of animals or birds.
- For example, in English the term “herd” can also be used for sheep or goats, but in the Bible text it is not used this way.
- The term “flock” in English is also used for a group of birds, but it can not be used for pigs, oxen, or cattle.
- Consider what terms are used in your language to refer to different groups of animals.
- For verses that refer to “flocks and herds” it may be better to add “of sheep” or “of cattle” for example, if the language does not have different words to refer to different kinds of animal groups.

(See also: [goat](#), [kid](#), [ox](#), [oxen](#), [pig](#), [swine](#), [pork](#), [sheep](#), [ram](#), [ewe](#), )

**Bible References:**

Waiting

## **fool, foolish, folly**

### **Definition:**

The term “fool” refers to a person who often makes wrong choices, especially choosing to disobey. The term “foolish” describes a person or behavior that is not wise.

- In the Bible, the term “fool” usually refers to a person who does not believe or obey God. This is often contrasted to the wise person, who trusts in God and obeys God.
- In the Psalms, David describes a fool as a person who does not believe in God, who ignores all the evidence of God in his creation.
- The Old Testament book of Proverbs also gives many descriptions of what a fool, or foolish person, is like.
- The term “folly” refers to an action that is not wise because it is against God’s will. Often “folly” also includes the meaning of something that is ridiculous or dangerous.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- The term “fool” could be translated as, “foolish person” or “unwise person” or “senseless person” or “ungodly person.”
- Ways to translate “foolish” could include, “lacking understanding” or “unwise” or “senseless.”

(See also: [wise](#), [wisdom](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## forever

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “forever” refers to never-ending time. Sometimes it is used figuratively to mean, “a very long time.”

- The term “forever and ever” emphasizes that something will always exist.
- The phrase “forever and ever” is a way of expressing what eternity or eternal life is. It also has the idea of time that never ends.
- God said that David’s throne would last “forever.” This is referring to the fact that David’s descendant Jesus will reign as king forever.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term could also be translated by “always” or “never ending.”
- The phrase, “will last forever” could also be translated as “always exist” or “will never stop” or “will always continue.”
- The emphatic phrase, “forever and ever” could also be translated as, “for always and always” or “not ever ending” or “which never, ever ends.”
- David’s throne lasting forever could be translated as, “David’s descendant will reign forever” or “a descendant of mine will always be reigning.”

(See also: [David](#), [everlasting](#), [eternal](#), [eternity](#), [reign](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting



## **fountain, spring**

### **Definition:**

The terms “fountain” and “spring” usually refer to a large amount of water that flows out naturally from the ground.

- These words are also used figuratively in the Bible to refer to blessings flowing from God or to refer to something that cleanses and purifies.
- In modern times, a fountain is often a manmade object that has water flowing out of it, such as a drinking fountain. Make sure that the translation of this term refers to a natural source of flowing water.
- Compare the translation of this term with how the term “flood” is translated.

(See also: [flood](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## generation

UNDER REVIEW

### Definition:

The term “generation” refers to a group of people who were all born around the same time period.

- A generation can also refer to a span of time. In Bible times, a generation was usually considered to be about 40 years.
- Parents and their children are from two different generations.
- In the Bible, the term “generation” is also used figuratively to refer generally to people who share common characteristics.

### Translation Suggestions

- The phrase “this generation” or “people of this generation” could be translated as, “the people living now” or “you people.”
- “This wicked generation” could also be translated as, “these wicked people living now.”
- The expression “from generation to generation” or “from one generation to the next” could be translated as, “people living now, as well as their children and grandchildren” or “people in every time period” or “people in this time period and future time periods” or “all people and their descendants.”
- “A generation to come will serve him; they will tell the next generation about Yahweh” could also be translated as “Many people in the future will serve Yahweh and will tell their children and grandchildren about him.”

(See also: [descendant](#), [descended from](#), [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#), [ancestor](#), [father](#), [forefather](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## gift

### Definition:

The term “gift” refers to anything that is given or offered to someone. A gift is given without the expectation of getting anything in return

- Money, food, clothing, or other things given to poor people are called “gifts.”
- In the Bible, an offering or sacrifice given to God is also called a gift
- The gift of salvation is something God gives us through faith in Jesus.
- In the New Testament, the term “gifts” is also used to refer to special spiritual abilities that God gives to all Christians for serving other people.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The general term for “gift” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “something that is given.”
- In the context of someone having a gift or special ability that comes from God, the term “gift from the Spirit” could be translated as, “spiritual ability” or “special ability from the Holy Spirit” or “special spiritual skill that God gave.”

(See also: [spirit](#), [spiritual](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## God

### Facts:

In the Bible, the term “God” refers to the eternal being who created the universe out of nothing. God exists as Father, Son, and Holy Spirit. God’s personal name is “Yahweh.”

- God has always existed; he existed before anything else existed, and he will continue to exist forever.
- He is the only true God and has authority over everything in the universe.
- God is perfectly righteous, infinitely wise, holy, sinless, just, merciful, and loving.
- He is a covenant-keeping God, who always fulfills his promises.
- People were created to worship God and he is the only one they should worship.
- God revealed his name as “Yahweh” which means, “he is” or “I am” or “the One who (always) exists.”
- The Bible also teaches about false “gods” which are nonliving idols that people wrongly worship.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “God” could include, “Deity” or “Creator” or “Supreme Being.”
- Other ways to translate “God” could be, “Supreme Creator” or “Infinite Sovereign Lord” or “Eternal Supreme Being.”
- Consider how God is referred to in a local or national language. There may also already be a word for “God” in the language being translated. If so, it is important to make sure that this word fits the characteristics of the one true God as described above.
- Many languages capitalize the first letter of the word for the one true God, to distinguish it from the word for a false god.
- Another way to make this distinction would be to use two different terms for “God” and “god.”
- The phrase, “I will be their God and they will be my people” could also be translated as, “I, God, will rule over these people and they will worship me.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [create](#), [creation](#), [Creator](#), [false god](#), [god](#), [God the Father](#), [Heavenly Father](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [idol](#), [Son of God](#), [the Son](#), [Yahweh](#),)

### Bible References:

Waiting

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- [01-01]**God** created the universe and everything in it in six days.
- [01-15]**God** made man and woman in his own image.
- [05-03]"I am **God** Almighty. I will make a covenant with you."
- [09-14]**God** said, "I AM WHO I AM. Tell them, 'I AM has sent me to you.' Also tell them, 'I am Yahweh, the **God** of your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. This is my name forever.'"
- [10-02] Through these plagues, **God** showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt's gods.
- [16-01] The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the true **God**.
- [22-07] You, my son, will be called the prophet of the **Most High God** who will prepare the people to receive the Messiah!"
- [24-09] There is only one **God**. But John heard **God** the Father speak, and saw Jesus the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized Jesus.
- [25-07]"Worship only the Lord your **God** and only serve him."
- [28-01]"There is only one who is good, and that is **God**."
- [49-09] But **God** loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with **God** forever.
- [50-16] But some day **God** will create a new heaven and a new earth that will be perfect.

## gold

### Definition:

Gold is a yellow-colored high-quality metal that was used for making jewelry and religious objects. It was the most valuable metal in ancient times.

- In Bible times, many different kinds of objects were made out of solid gold or were covered with a thin layer of gold.
- These objects included ear rings and other jewelry, idols, altars, and other objects used in the tabernacle or temple, such as the ark of the covenant.
- In Old Testament times, gold was used as a means of exchange in buying and selling. It was weighed on a scale to determine its value.
- Later on, gold and other metals such as silver were used to make coins to use in buying and selling
- When referring to something that is not solid gold, but only has a thin covering of gold, the term “golden” or “gold-covered” or “gold-overlaid” could also be used.
- Sometimes an object is described as “gold-colored” which means it has the yellow color of gold, but may not actually be made of gold.

(See also: [altar](#), [ark of the covenant](#), [ark of the covenant decrees](#), [ark of Yahweh](#), [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [silver](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## good, goodness

### Definition:

The word “good” has different meanings depending on the context. Many languages will use different words to translate these different meanings.

- In general, something is good if it fits with God’s character, purposes, and will.
- Something that is “good” could be pleasing, excellent, helpful, suitable, profitable, or morally right.
- Land that is “good” could be called “fertile” or “productive.”
- A “good” crop could be a “plentiful” crop.
- A person can be “good” at what they do if they are skillful at their task or profession, as in, “a good farmer.”
- In the Bible, the general meaning of “good” is often contrasted with “evil.”
- The term “goodness” usually refers to being morally good or righteous in thoughts and actions.
- The goodness of God refers to how he blesses people by giving them good and beneficial things. It also can refer to his moral perfection.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The general term for “good” in the target language should be used wherever this general meaning is accurate and natural, especially in contexts where it is contrasted to evil.
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include, “kind” or “excellent” or “pleasing to God” or “righteous” or “morally upright” or “profitable.”
- “Good land” could be translated as, “fertile land” or “productive land”; a “good crop” could be translated as a “plentiful harvest” or “large amount of crops.”
- The phrase “do good to” means to do something that benefits others and could be translated as “be kind to” or “help” or “benefit” someone.
- To “do good on the Sabbath” means to “do things that help others on the Sabbath.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the term “goodness” could include, “blessing” or “kindness” or “moral perfection” or “righteousness” or “purity.”

(See also: [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#), [holy](#), [holiness](#), [profit](#), [profitable](#), [righteous](#), [righteousness](#), )

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- [01-04] God saw that what he had created was **good**.

- [01-11] God planted...the tree of the knowledge of **good** and evil.”
- [01-12] Then God said, ”It is not **good** for man to be alone.”
- [02-04]”God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand **good** and evil like he does.”
- [08-12]”You tried to do evil when you sold me as a slave, but God used the evil for **good!**”
- [14-15] Joshua was a **good** leader because he tTable of Contentsrusted and obeyed God.
- [18-13] Some of these kings were **good** men who ruled justly and worshiped God.
- [28-01]”**Good** teacher, what must I do to have eternal life?” Jesus said to him, ”Why do you call me ‘**good?**’ There is only one who is **good**, and that is God.”



**grace, gracious****Definition:**

The word “grace” refers to help or blessing that is given to someone who has not earned it. The term “gracious” describes someone who shows grace to others.

- God’s grace toward sinful human beings is a gift that is freely given.
- The concept of grace also refers to being kind and forgiving to someone who has done wrong or hurtful things.
- The expression “to find grace” is an expression that means to receive help and mercy from God. Often it includes the meaning that God is pleased with someone and helps him.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Other ways that “grace” could be translated include, “divine kindness” or “God’s favor” or “God’s kindness and forgiveness for sinners” or “merciful kindness.”
- The term “gracious” could be translated as “full of grace” or “kind” or “merciful” or “mercifully kind.”
- The expression, “he found grace in the eyes of God” could be translated as, “he received mercy from God” or “God mercifully helped him” or “God showed his favor to him” or “God was pleased with him and helped him.”

**Bible References:**

Waiting

## hades, sheol

### Definition:

The terms “hades” and “sheol” are used in the Bible to refer to death and the place where the souls of people go when they die. Their meanings are similar.

- The Hebrew term “sheol” is often used in the Old Testament to refer generally to the place of death.
- In the New Testament, the Greek term “hades” refers to a place for the souls of people who rebelled against God. These souls are referred to as going “down” to hades. This is sometimes contrasted to going “up” to heaven, where the souls of people who believe in Jesus live.
- The term “hades” is coupled with the term “death” in the book of Revelation. In the end times, both death and hades will be thrown into the Lake of Fire, which is hell.

### Translation Suggestions

- The Old Testament term “sheol” could be translated as “place of the dead” or “place for dead souls.” Some translations translate this as “the pit” or “death,” depending on the context.
- The New Testament term “hades” could also be translated as “place for unbelieving dead souls” or “place of torment for the dead” or “place for the souls of unbelieving dead people.”
- Some translations keep the word “sheol” or “hades,” spelling them to fit the sound patterns of the language of translation. (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#)).
- A phrase could also be added to the term to explain it, for example, “sheol, place where dead people are” or “hades, place of death.”

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#), [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [death](#), [heaven](#), [sky](#), [heavens](#), [heavenly](#), [hell](#), [lake of fire](#), [tomb](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## **hand, right hand, to hand over**

### **Definition:**

There are several figurative ways that “hand” is used in the Bible:

- To “hand” something to someone means to put something into that person’s hands.
- The term “hand” is often used in reference to God’s power and action, such as when God says, “Has not my hand made all these things?” (See: **Metonymy**)
- Expressions such as “hand over to” or “deliver into the hands of” refer to causing someone to be under the control or power of someone else.
- Placing hands on someone is often done while speaking a blessing over that person.
- The term “laying on of hands” refers to placing a hand on a person in order to dedicate that person to God’s service or to pray for healing.
- Some other figurative uses of “hand” include:
  - To “lay a hand on” means to “harm.”
  - To “save from the hand of” means to stop someone from harming someone else.
  - To be “close at hand” means to be “nearby.”
  - The position of being “on the right hand” means “on the right side” or “to the right.”
  - The expression “by the hand of” someone means “by” or “through” the action of that person. For example, “by the hand of the Lord” means that the Lord is the one who caused something to happen.
- When Paul says “written by my hand,” it means that this part of the letter was physically written down by him, rather than spoken to someone else to write down.

### **Translation Suggestions**

- These expressions and other figures of speech could be translated using other figurative expressions that have the same meaning. Or the meaning could be translated using direct, literal language (see examples above).
- The expression, “handed him the scroll” could also be translated as “gave him the scroll” or “put the scroll in his hand.” It was not given to him permanently, but just for the purpose of using it at that time.
- When “hand” refers to the person, such as in “the hand of God did this,” it could be translated as “God did this.”
- An expression such as “delivered them into the hands of their enemies” or “handed them over to their enemies,” could be translated as, “allowed their enemies to conquer them” or “caused them to be captured by their enemies” or “empowered their enemies to gain control over them.”
- To “die by the hand of” could be translated as, “be killed by.”
- The expression “on the right hand of” could be translated as “on the right side of.”
- In regard to Jesus being “seated at the right hand of God,” if this does not communicate in the language that it refers to a position of high honor and equal authority, a different expression

with that meaning could be used. Or a short explanation could be added: “on the right side of God, in the position of highest authority.”

(See also: [adversary](#), [enemy](#), [bless](#), [blessed](#), [blessing](#), [captive](#), [captivity](#), [honor](#), [to honor](#), [power](#), [powers](#))

**Bible References:**

Waiting

## harvest

### Definition:

The term “harvest” refers to the gathering in of ripe fruits or vegetables from the plants on which they were growing.

- The harvest time normally happens at the end of a growing season.
- The Israelites held a “Festival of Harvest” or “Festival of Ingathering” to celebrate the reaping of the food crops. God commanded them to offer the first fruits of these crops as a sacrifice to him.
- In a figurative sense, the word “harvest” can refer to people coming to believe in Jesus or can describe a person’s spiritual growth.
- The idea of a harvest of spiritual crops fits with the figurative image of fruits being a picture of godly character qualities.

### Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term with the word that is commonly used in the language to refer to the harvesting of crops.
- The event of harvesting could be translated as, “time of gathering in” or “crop gathering time” or “fruit picking time.”
- The verb “to harvest” could be translated as, “to gather in” or “to pick up” or “to collect.”

(See: [firstfruits](#), [festival](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## heal, cure

### Definition:

The terms “heal” and “cure” both mean to cause a sick, wounded, or disabled person to be healthy again.

- A person who is “healed” or “cured” has been “made well” or “made healthy.”
- Healing can happen naturally since God gave our bodies the ability to recover from many kinds of wounds and diseases. This kind of healing usually happens slowly.
- However, certain conditions such as being blind or paralyzed, and certain serious diseases such as leprosy do not heal on their own. When people are healed of these things, it is a miracle that usually happens suddenly.
- For example, Jesus healed many people who were blind or lame or diseased and they became well right away.
- The apostles also healed people miraculously, such as when Peter caused a crippled man to immediately be able to walk.

(See also: [miracle](#), [wonder](#), [sign](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[19-14]** One of the miracles happened to Naaman, an enemy commander, who had a horrible skin disease. He had heard of Elisha so he went and asked Elisha to **heal** him.
- **[21-10]** He (Isaiah) also predicted that the Messiah would **heal** sick people and those who could not hear, see, speak, or walk.
- **[26-06]** Jesus continued saying, “And during the time of the prophet Elisha, there were many people in Israel with skin diseases. But Elisha did not **heal** any of them. He only **healed** the skin disease of Naaman, a commander of Israel’s enemies.”
- **[26-08]** They brought many people who were sick or handicapped, including those who could not see, walk, hear, or speak, and Jesus **healed** them.
- **[32-14]** She had heard that Jesus had **healed** many sick people and thought, “I’m sure that if I can just touch Jesus’ clothes, then I will be **healed**, too!”
- **[44-03]** Immediately, God **healed** the lame man, and he began to walk and jump around, and to praise God.
- **[44-08]** Peter answered them, “This man stands before you **healed** by the power of Jesus the Messiah.”
- **[49-02]** ] Jesus did many miracles that prove he is God. He walked on water, calmed storms, **healed** many sick people, drove out demons, raised the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.

## heart

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “heart” is often used figuratively to refer to a person’s thoughts, emotions, desires, or will.

- To have a “hard heart” is a common expression that means a person stubbornly refuses to obey God.
- The expressions “with all my heart” or “with my whole heart” mean to do something with no holding back, with complete commitment and willingness.
- The expression, “take it to heart” means to treat something seriously and apply it to one’s life.
- The term “brokenhearted” describes a person who is very sad. They have been deeply hurt emotionally.

### Translation Suggestions

- Some languages use a different body part such as “stomach” or “liver” to refer to these ideas.
- Other languages may use one word to express some of these concepts and another word to express others.
- If “heart” or other body part does not have this meaning, some languages may need to express this nonfiguratively with terms such as “thoughts” or “emotions” or “desires.”
- Depending on the context, “with all my heart” or “with my whole heart” could be translated as, “with all my energy” or “with complete dedication” or “completely” or “with total commitment.”
- The expression “take it to heart” could be translated as “treat it seriously” or “carefully think about it.”
- The expression “hard-hearted” could also be translated as, “stubbornly rebellious” or “refusing to obey” or “continually disobeying God.”
- Ways to translate “brokenhearted” could include, “very sad” or “feeling deeply hurt.”

(See also: [hard](#), [hardness](#), [harden](#) other)

### Bible References:

Waiting

## heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly

### Definition:

The term that is translated as “heaven” refers to where God lives. The same word can also mean “sky,” depending on the context.

- The term “heavens” refers to everything we see above the earth, including the sun, moon, and stars. It also includes the heavenly bodies, such as far-off planets, that we can’t directly see from the earth.
- The term “sky” refers to the blue expanse above the earth that has clouds and the air we breathe. Often the sun and moon are also said to be “up in the sky.”
- In some contexts in the Bible, the word “heaven” could refer to either the sky or the place where God lives.
- When “heaven” is used figuratively, it is a way of referring to God. For example, when Matthew writes about the “kingdom of heaven” he is referring to the kingdom of God.

### Translation Suggestions:

- When “heaven” is used figuratively, it could be translated as “God.”
- For “kingdom of heaven” in the book of Matthew, it is best to keep the word “heaven” since this is distinctive to Matthew’s gospel.
- The terms “heavens” or “heavenly bodies” could also be translated as, “sun, moon, and stars” or “all the stars in the universe.”
- The phrase, “stars of heaven” could be translated as “stars in the sky” or “stars in the galaxy” or “stars in the universe.”

(See: [kingdom of God](#), [kingdom of heaven](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- [04-02] They even began building a tall tower to reach **heaven**.
- [14-11] He (God) gave them bread from **heaven**, called “manna.”
- [23-07] Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, “Glory to God in **heaven** and peace on earth to the people he favors!”
- [29-09] Then Jesus said, “This is what my **heavenly** Father will do to every one of you if you do not forgive your brother from your heart.”
- [37-09] Then Jesus looked up to **heaven** and said, “Father, thank you for hearing me.”
- [42-11] Then Jesus went up to **heaven**, and a cloud hid him from their sight.



## holy, holiness

### Definition:

The terms “holy” and “holiness” refer to the character of God that is totally set apart and separated from everything that is sinful and imperfect.

- Only God is absolutely holy. He makes people and things holy.
- A person who is holy belongs to God and has been set apart for the purpose of serving God and bringing him glory.
- An object that God has declared to be holy is one that he has set apart for his glory and use, such as an altar that is for the purpose of offering sacrifices to him.
- Since God is holy, people cannot approach him unless he allows them to, because they are mere human beings, sinful and imperfect.
- In the Old Testament, God set apart the priests as holy for special service to him. They had to be ceremonially cleansed from sin in order to approach God.
- God also set apart as holy certain places and things that belonged to him or in which he revealed himself, such as his temple.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “holy” might include, “set apart for God” or “belonging to God” or “completely pure” or “perfectly sinless” or “separated from sin.”
- To “make holy” is often translated as “sanctify” in English. It could also be translated as “set apart (someone) for God’s glory.”

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [consecratesanctify](#), [sanctification](#), [set apart](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[01-16]** He (God) blessed the seventh day and made it **holy**, because on this day he rested from his work.
- **[09-12]** “You are standing on **holy** ground.”
- **[13-02]** “If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a **holy** nation.”
- **[13-05]** “Always be sure to keep the Sabbath day **holy**.”
- **[22-05]** “So the baby will be **holy**, the Son of God.”
- **[50-02]** As we wait for Jesus to return, God wants us to live in a way that is **holy** and that honors him.

## **honor, to honor**

### **Definition:**

The terms “honor” and “to honor” refer to giving someone respect, esteem, or reverence.

- Honor is usually given to someone who is of higher status and importance, such as a king or God.
- God also instructs Christians to honor others, but not to try to get honor for themselves.
- Children are instructed to honor their parents, which includes respect and obedience.
- the terms “honor” and “glory” are often used together, especially when referring to Jesus. These may be two different ways of referring to the same thing.
- Honor for God includes thanking and praising him, and showing him respect by obeying him and living in a way that shows how great he is.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Other ways to translate “honor” could include, “respect” or “esteem” or “high regard.”
- The term “to honor” could be translated as “to show special respect to” or “to cause to be praised” or “to show high regard for” or “to highly value.”

(See also: [dishonor](#), [dishonorable](#), [glory](#), [glorious](#), [glorify](#), [praise](#) other)

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## hope

### Definition:

The term “hope” refers to expecting and strongly desiring something to happen. It can also mean to not be certain that it will happen.

- In the Bible, the term “hope” also has the meaning of “trust” as in, “my hope is in the Lord.” It refers to a sure expectation of receiving what God has promised his people.
- Sometimes the ULB translates the term “hope” as “confidence,” especially in the New Testament in contexts that refer to the assurance of receiving what God has promised to people who believe in Jesus as their Savior.
- To have “no hope” means to have no expectation of something good happening. It means that it is actually very certain that it will not happen.

### Translation Suggestions:

- In some contexts, the term “to hope” could also be translated as “to wish” or “to desire” or “to expect.”
- The expression, “nothing to hope for” could be translated as “nothing to trust in” or “no expectation of anything good”
- To “have no hope” could be translated as, “have no expectation of anything good” or “have no security” or “be sure that nothing good will happen.”
- The expression, “have set your hopes on” could also be translated as “have put your confidence in” or “have been trusting in.”
- The phrase “I find hope in your Word” could also be translated as, “I am confident that your Word is true” or “Your Word helps me trust in you” or “When I obey your Word, I am certain to be blessed.”
- Phrases such as, “hope in” God could also be translated as, “trust in God” or “know for sure that God will do what he has promised” or “be certain that God is faithful.”

(See also: [bless](#), [blessed](#), [blessing](#), [confidence](#), [confident](#), [good](#), [goodness](#), [obey](#), [obedient](#), [obedience](#), [trust](#), [trustworthy](#), [trustworthiness](#), [word of God](#), [word of Yahweh](#), [word of the Lord](#), [scripture](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

~review~DISCUSSION~~

## horse

### Definition:

A horse is a large, four-legged animal that in Bible times was mostly used for doing farm work and for transporting people.

- Some horses were used to pull carts or chariots, while others were used to carry individual riders.
- Horses often wear a bit and bridle on their heads so they can be guided.
- In the Bible, horses were considered to be valuable possessions and a measure of wealth, mainly because of their use in war. For example, part of King Solomon's great wealth was the thousands of horses and chariots that he had.
- Animals that are similar to the horse are the donkey and the mule.

(See also: [chariot](#), , [donkey](#), [mule](#), [Solomon](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## house

### Definition:

The term “house” is often used figuratively in the Bible.

- Sometimes it means “household,” referring to the people who live together in one house.
- Often “house” refers to a person’s descendants or other relatives. For example, the phrase “house of David” refers to all the descendants of King David.
- The terms “house of God” and “house of Yahweh” refer to the tabernacle or temple. These expressions can also refer generally to where God is or dwells.
- In Hebrews 3, “God’s house” is used as a metaphor to refer to God’s people or more generally, to everything pertaining to God.
- The phrase “house of Israel” can refer generally to the entire nation of Israel or more specifically to the tribes of the northern kingdom of Israel.

### Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, “house” could be translated as, “household” or “people” or “family” or “descendants” or “temple” or “dwelling place.”
- The phrase “house of David” could be translated as, “clan of David” or “family of David” or “descendants of David.” Related expressions could be translated in a similar way.
- Different ways to translate “house of Israel” could include, “people of Israel” or “Israel’s descendants” or “Israelites.”
- The phrase “house of Yahweh” could be translated as “Yahweh’s temple” or “place where Yahweh is worshiped” or “place where Yahweh meets with his people” or “where Yahweh dwells.”
- “House of God” could be translated in a similar way.

(See also: [David](#), [descendant](#), [descended from](#), [house of God](#), [Yahweh’s house](#), [household](#), [kingdom of Israel](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#), [Yahweh](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## **house of God, Yahweh's house**

### **Definition:**

In the Bible, the phrases “house of God” (God’s house) and “house of Yahweh (Yahweh’s house) refer to a place where God is worshiped.

- This term is also used more specifically to refer to the tabernacle or the temple.
- Sometimes “God’s house” is used to refer to the people of God.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- When referring to a place of worship, this term could be translated as, “a house for worshiping God” or “a place for worshiping God.”
- If it is referring to the temple or tabernacle, this could be translated as, “the temple (or tabernacle) where God is worshiped (or “where God is present” or “where God meets with his people.”)
- The word “house” may be important to use in the translation in order to communicate that God “dwells” there, that is, his spirit is in that place to meet with his people and to be worshiped by them.

(See also: [people of God](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#) )

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## **inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir**

### **Definition:**

The terms “inherit” and “inheritance” refer to receiving something valuable from a parent or other person because of a special relationship with that person. The “heir” is the person who receives the inheritance.

- A physical inheritance that is received may be money, land, or other kinds of property.
- A spiritual inheritance is everything that God gives people who trust in Jesus, including blessings in the present life as well as eternal life with him.
- The Bible also calls God’s people his inheritance, which means that they belong to him; they are his valued possession.
- God promised Abraham and his descendants that they would inherit the land of Canaan, that it would belong to them forever.
- There is also a figurative or spiritual sense in which people who belong to God are said to “inherit the land.” This means that they will prosper and be blessed by God in both physical and spiritual ways.
- In the New Testament, God promises that those who trust in Jesus will “inherit salvation” and “inherit eternal life.” It is also expressed as, “inherit the kingdom of God.” This is a spiritual inheritance that lasts forever.
- There are other figurative meanings for these terms:
  - The Bible says that wise people will “inherit glory” and righteous people will “inherit good things.”
  - To “inherit the promises” means to receive the good things that God has promised to give his people.
  - This term is also used in a negative sense to refer to foolish or disobedient people who “inherit the wind” or “inherit folly.” This means they receive the consequences of their sinful actions, including punishment and worthless living.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- As always, consider first whether there are already terms in the target language for the concept of an heir or an inheritance and use those terms.
- Depending on the context, other ways that the term “inherit” could be translated might include, “receive” or “possess” or “come into possession of.”
- Ways to translate “inheritance” could include, “promised gift” or “secure possession.”
- When God’s people are referred to as his inheritance this could be translated as, “valued ones belonging to him.”
- The term “heir” could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “privileged child who receives the father’s possessions” or “person chosen to receive (God’s) spiritual possessions or blessings.”
- The term “heritage” could be translated as, “blessings from God” or “inherited blessings.”

(See also: [heir](#), [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [Promised Land](#))

**Bible References:**

Waiting

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **[04-06]** When Abram arrived in Canaan God said, "Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an **inheritance**."
- **[27-01]** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, "Teacher, what must I do to **inherit** eternal life?"
- **[35-03]** "There was a man who had two sons. The younger son told his father, 'Father, I want my **inheritance** now!' So the father divided his property between the two sons."



## Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel

### Facts:

The term “Israel” is the name that God gave to Jacob. It means, “he struggles with God.”

- The descendants of Jacob became known as the “people of Israel,” the “nation of Israel,” or the “Israelites.”
- God formed his covenant with the people of Israel. They were his chosen people.
- The nation of Israel was made up of twelve tribes.
- Soon after King Solomon died, Israel was divided into two kingdoms: the southern kingdom, called “Judah” and the northern kingdom, called “Israel.”
- Often the term “Israel” can be translated as, “the people of Israel” or “the nation of Israel,” depending on the context.

(See also: [Jacob](#), [Israel](#), [kingdom of Israel](#), [Judah](#), [kingdom of Judah](#), [nation](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[08-15]** The descendants of the twelve sons became the twelve tribes of **Israel**.
- **[09-03]** The Egyptians forced the **Israelites** to build many buildings and even whole cities.
- **[09-05]** A certain **Israelite** woman gave birth to a baby boy.
- **[10-01]** They said, “This is what the God of **Israel** says, ‘Let my people go!’”
- **[14-12]** But despite all this, the people of **Israel** complained and grumbled against God and against Moses.
- **[15-09]** God fought for **Israel** that day. He caused the Amorites to be confused and he sent large hailstones that killed many of the Amorites.
- **[15-12]** After this battle, God gave each tribe of **Israel** its own section of the Promised Land. Then God gave **Israel** peace along all its borders.
- **[16-16]** So God punished **Israel** again for worshiping idols.
- **[43-06]** “Men of **Israel**, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the power of God, as you have seen and already know.”

## Jerusalem

### Facts:

Jerusalem was originally an ancient Canaanite city that later became the most important city in Israel. It is located about 34 kilometers west of the Salt Sea and just north of Bethlehem. It is still the capital city of present-day Israel.

- The name, “Jerusalem” is first mentioned in the book of Joshua. Other Old Testament names for this city include “Salem”, “city of Jebus,” and “Zion.” Both “Jerusalem” and “Salem” have the root meaning of “peace.”
- Jerusalem was originally a Jebusite fortress called “Zion” which King David captured and made into his capital city.
- David’s son Solomon built the first temple in Jerusalem, on Mount Moriah, which was the mountain where Abraham had offered his son Isaac to God. The temple was rebuilt there after it was destroyed by the Babylonians.
- Because the temple was in Jerusalem, the major Jewish festivals were celebrated there.
- People normally referred to going “up” to Jerusalem since it was located in the mountains.

(See also: [Babylon](#), [Babylonian](#), [Christ](#), [Messiah](#), [David](#), [Jebusites](#), [Jebus](#), [Jesus](#), [Jesus Christ](#), [Christ Jesus](#), [Solomon](#), [temple](#), [Zion](#), [Mount Zion](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- [17-05] David conquered **Jerusalem** and made it his capital city.
- [18-02] In **Jerusalem**, Solomon built the Temple for which his father David had planned and gathered materials.
- [20-07] They (Babylonians) captured the city of **Jerusalem**, destroyed the Temple, and took away all the treasures of the city and the Temple.
- [20-12] So, after seventy years in exile, a small group of Jews returned to the city of **Jerusalem** in Judah.
- [38-01] About three years after Jesus first began preaching and teaching publicly, Jesus told his disciples that he wanted to celebrate this Passover with them in **Jerusalem**, and that he would be killed there.
- [38-02] After Jesus and the disciples arrived in **Jerusalem**, Judas went to the Jewish leaders and offered to betray Jesus to them in exchange for money.
- [42-08] ”It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in **Jerusalem**, and then go to all people groups everywhere.”

- **[42-11]** Forty days after Jesus rose from the dead, he told his disciples, "Stay in **Jerusalem** until you receive power when the Holy Spirit comes on you."

## joy, joyful

### Definition:

Joy is a feeling of delight or deep satisfaction that comes from God. The related term, “joyful” describes a person who feels very glad and full of deep happiness.

- A person feels joy when he has a deep sense that what he is experiencing is very good.
- God is the one who gives true joy to people.
- Having joy does not depend on pleasant circumstances. God can give people joy even when very difficult things are happening in their lives.
- Sometimes places are described as joyful, such as houses or cities. This means that the people who live there are joyful.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “joy” could also be translated as “gladness” or “delight” or “great happiness.”
- The phrase, “be joyful” could be translated as “rejoice” or “be very glad” or with a phrase that means, “be very happy in God’s goodness.”
- A person who is joyful could be described as “very happy” or “delighted” or “deeply glad.”
- A phrase such as “make a joyful shout” could be translated as “shout in a way that shows you are very happy.”
- A “joyful city” or “joyful house” could be translated as “city where joyful people live” or “house full of joyful people” or “city whose people are very happy.” **Metonymy**)

(See also: [rejoice](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[33-07]**”The rocky ground is a person who hears God’s word and accepts it with **joy**.”
- **[34-04]**”The kingdom of God is also like hidden treasure that someone hid in a field.. Another man found the treasure and then buried it again. He was so filled with **joy**, that he went and sold everything he had and used the money to buy that field.”
- **[41-07]** The women were full of fear and great **joy**. They ran to tell the disciples the good news.

## judge, judgment

### Definition:

The terms “judge” and “judgment” often refer to making a decision about whether something is morally right or wrong.

- The “judgment of God” often refers to his decision to condemn something or someone as sinful.
- God’s judgment usually includes punishing people for their sin.
- The term “judge” can also mean “condemn.” God instructs his people not to judge each other in this way.
- Another meaning is “arbitrate between” or “judge between,” as in deciding which person is right in a dispute between them.
- In some contexts, God’s “judgments” are what he has decided is right and just. They are similar to his decrees, laws, or precepts.
- “Judgment” can refer to wise decision-making ability. A person who lacks “judgment” does not have the wisdom to make wise decisions.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “to judge” could include, “to decide” or “to condemn” or “to punish” or “to decree.”
- The term “judgment” could be translated as, “punishment” or “decision” or “verdict” or “decree” or “condemnation.”
- In some contexts, the phrase “in the judgment” could also be translated as “on judgment day” or “during the time when God judges people.”

(See also: [decree](#), [judge](#), [judgment day](#), [just](#), [justice](#), [justly](#), [law](#), [principle](#), [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [God’s law](#), [law of Yahweh](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[19-16]** The prophets warned the people that if they did not stop doing evil and start obeying God, then God would **judge** them as guilty, and he would punish them.
- **[21-08]** A king is someone who rules over a kingdom and **judges** the people. The Messiah would come would be the perfect king who would sit on the throne of his ancestor David. He would reign over the whole world forever, and who would always **judge** honestly and make the right decisions.

- **[39-04]** The high priest tore his clothes in anger and shouted to the other religious leaders, "We do not need any more witnesses! You have heard him say that he is the Son of God. What is your **judgment**?"
- **[50-14]** But God will **judge** everyone who does not believe in Jesus. He will throw them into hell, where they will weep and grind their teeth in anguish forever.

## **judge**

### **Definition:**

A judge is a person who decides what is right or wrong when there are disputes between people, usually in matters that pertain to the law.

- In the Bible, God is often referred to as a judge because he is the one perfect judge who makes the final decisions about what is right or wrong.
- After the people of Israel entered the land of Canaan and before they had kings to rule them, God appointed leaders called “judges” to lead them in times of trouble. Often these judges were military leaders who rescued the Israelites by defeating their enemies.
- The term “judge” could also be called “decision-maker” or “leader” or “deliverer” or “governor,” depending on the context.

(See also: [governor](#), [govern](#), [proconsul](#), [government](#), [judge](#), [judgment](#), [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [God’s law](#), [law of Yahweh](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## just, justice, justly

### Definition:

These terms refer to treating people fairly according to God's laws. Human laws that reflect God's standard of right behavior toward others are also just.

- To be "just" is to act in a fair and right way toward others. It also implies honesty and integrity to do what is morally right in God's eyes.
- To act "justly" means to treat people in a way that is right, good and proper according to God's laws.
- To receive "justice" means to be treated fairly under the law, either being protected by law or being punished for breaking the law.
- Sometimes the term "just" has the broader meaning of "righteous" or "following God's laws."

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate "just" could include, "morally right" or "fair."
- The term "justice" could be translated as, "fair treatment" or "deserved consequences."
- To "act justly" could be translated as, "treat fairly" or "behave in a just way."
- In some contexts, "just" could be translated as, "righteous" or "upright."

(See also: [judge](#), [judgment](#), [righteous](#), [righteousness](#), [upright](#), [uprightness](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- [17-09] David ruled with **justice** and faithfulness for many years, and God blessed him.
- [18-13] Some of these kings (of Judah) were good men who ruled **justly** and worshiped God.
- [19-16] They (the prophets) all told the people to stop worshiping idols and to start showing **justice** and mercy to others.
- [50-17] Jesus will rule his kingdom with peace and **justice**, and he will be with his people forever.



## kingdom

### Definition:

A kingdom is a group of people ruled by a king. It also refers to the realm or political regions over which a king or other ruler has control and authority.

- A kingdom can be of any geographical size. A king might govern a nation or country or only one city.
- The term “kingdom” can also refer to a spiritual reign or authority, as in the term “kingdom of God.”
- God is the ruler of all creation, but the term “kingdom of God” especially refers to his reign and authority over the people who have believed in Jesus and who have submitted to his authority.
- The Bible also talks about Satan having a “kingdom” in which he temporarily rules over many things on this earth. His kingdom is evil and is referred to as “darkness.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to a physical region that is ruled over by a king, the term “kingdom” could be translated as, “country (ruled by a king)” or “king’s territory” or “region ruled by a king.”
- In a spiritual sense, “kingdom” could be translated as “ruling” or “reigning” or “controlling” or “governing.”
- One way to translate “kingdom of priests” might be, “spiritual priests who are ruled by God.”
- The phrase, “kingdom of light” could be translated as, “God’s reign that is good like light” or “when God, who is light, rules people” or “the light and goodness of God’s kingdom.” It is best to keep the word “light” in this expression since that is a very important term in the Bible.
- Note that the term “kingdom” is different from an empire, in which an emperor rules over several countries.

(See also: [authority](#), [king](#), [kingdom of God](#), [kingdom of heaven](#), [kingdom of Israel](#), [Judah](#), [Judah](#), [kingdom of Judah](#), [priest](#), [priesthood](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[13-02]** God said to Moses and the people of Israel, “If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a **kingdom** of priests, and a holy nation.”
- **[18-04]** God was angry with Solomon and, as a punishment for Solomon’s unfaithfulness, he promised to divide the nation of Israel in two **kingdoms** after Solomon’s death.

- [18-07] Ten of the tribes of the nation of Israel rebelled against Rehoboam. Only two tribes remained faithful to him. These two tribes became the **kingdom** of Judah.
- [18-08] The other ten tribes of the nation of Israel that rebelled against Rehoboam appointed a man named Jeroboam to be their king. They set up their **kingdom** in the northern part of the land and were called the **kingdom** of Israel.
- [21-08] A king is someone who rules over a **kingdom** and judges the people.

## king

### Definition:

The term “king” refers to a man who is the supreme ruler of a city, state, or country.

- A king is usually chosen to rule because of his family relation to previous kings.
- When a king dies, it is usually his oldest son who becomes the next king.
- In ancient times, the king had absolute authority over the people in his kingdom.
- Rarely the term “king” may be used to refer to someone who is not a true king, such as “King Herod” in the New Testament.
- In the Bible, God is often referred to as a king who rules over his people.
- The “kingdom of God” refers to God’s rule over his people.
- Jesus was called “king of the Jews,” “king of Israel,” and “king of kings.”
- When Jesus comes back, he will rule as king over the world.
- This term could also be translated as, “supreme chief” or “absolute leader” or “sovereign ruler.”
- The phrase “king of kings” could be translated as, “king who rules over all other kings” or “supreme ruler who has authority over all other rulers.”

(See also: [authority](#), [Herod Antipas](#), [kingdom](#), [kingdom of God](#), [kingdom of heaven](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[08-06]** One night, the Pharaoh, which is what the Egyptians called their kings, had two dreams that disturbed him greatly.
- **[16-01]** The Israelites had no **king**, so everyone did what they thought was right for them.
- **[16-18]** Finally, the people asked God for a **king** like all the other nations had.
- **[17-05]** Eventually, Saul died in battle, and David became **king** of Israel. He was a good **king**, and the people loved him.
- **[21-06]** God’s prophets also said that the Messiah would be a prophet, a priest, and a **king**.
- **[48-14]** David was the **king** of Israel, but Jesus is the **king** of the entire universe!

## know, knowledge, make known

### Definition:

To “know” means to understand something or to be aware of a fact. The expression “make known” is an expression that means to tell information.

- The term “knowledge” refers to information that people know. It can apply to knowing things in both the physical and spiritual worlds.
- To “know about” God means to understand facts about him because of what he has revealed to us.
- To “know” God means to have a relationship with him. This also applies to knowing people.
- To know God’s will means to be aware of what he has commanded, or to understand what he wants a person to do.
- To “know the Law” means to be aware of what God has commanded or to understand what God has instructed in the laws he gave to Moses.
- Sometimes “knowledge” is used as a synonym for “wisdom,” which includes living in a way that is pleasing to God.
- The “knowledge of God” is sometimes used as a synonym for the “fear of Yahweh.”

### Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “know” could include, “understand” or “be familiar with” or “be aware of” or “be acquainted with” or “be in relationship with.”
- Some languages have two different words for “know” depending on whether it refers to knowing facts or to knowing a person and having a relationship with him.
- The term “make known” could be translated as “cause people to know” or “reveal” or “tell about” or “explain.”
- To “know about” something could be translated as “be aware of” or “be familiar with.”
- The expression “know how to” means to understand the process or method of getting something done. It could also be translated as, “be able to” or “have the skill to.”
- The term “knowledge” could also be translated as, “what is known” or “wisdom” or “understanding,” depending on the context.

(See also: [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [God’s law](#), [law of Yahweh](#), [reveal](#), [revelation](#), [understand](#), [understanding](#), [wise](#), [wisdom](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## **labor, laborer**

### **Definition:**

The term “labor” refers to doing hard work of any kind.

- In general, labor is any task which uses energy. It often implies that the task is difficult.
- A laborer is a person who does any type of labor.
- In English, the word “labor” is also used for part of the process of giving birth. Other languages may have a completely different word for this.
- Ways to translate “labor” could include, “work” or “hard work” or “difficult work” or “to work hard.”

(See also: [hard](#), [hardness](#), [harden](#), [labor pains](#), [in labor](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## **lament, lamentation**

### **Definition:**

The terms “lament” and “lamentation” refer to a strong expression of mourning, sorrow, or grief.

- Sometimes this includes deep regret for sin, or compassion for people who have experienced disaster.
- A lamentation could include moaning, weeping, or wailing.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- The term “to lament” could be translated as, “to deeply mourn” or “to wail in grief” or “to be sorrowful.”
- A “lamentation” (or a “lament”) could be translated as “loud wailing and weeping” or “deep sorrow” or “sorrowful sobbing” or “mournful moaning.”

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## life, live, living, alive

### Definition:

All these terms refer to being physically alive, not dead. They are also used figuratively to refer to being alive spiritually. The following discusses what is meant by “physical life” and “spiritual life.”

### 1. Physical life

- Physical life is the presence of the spirit in the body. God breathed life into Adam’s body, and he became a living being.
- A “life” can also refer to an individual person, as in, “a life was saved”.
- Sometimes the word “life” refers to the experience of living, as in, “his life was enjoyable.”
- It can also refer to a person’s lifespan as in the expression, “the end of his life.”
- The term “living” may refer to being physically alive as in, “my mother is still living.” It may also refer to dwelling somewhere as in, “they were living in the city.”
- In the Bible, the concept of “life” is often contrasted with the concept of “death.”

### 2. Spiritual life

- A person has spiritual life when he believes in Jesus and God gives that person a transformed life with the Holy Spirit living in him.
- This life is also called “eternal life” to indicate that it does not end.
- The opposite of spiritual life is spiritual death, which means being separated from God and experiencing eternal punishment.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “life” can be translated as “existence” or “person” or “soul” or “being” or “experience.”
- The term “live” could be translated by “dwell” or “reside” or “exist.”
- The expression “end of his life” could be translated as, “when he stopped living.”
- The expression “spared their lives’ could be translated as, “allowed them to live” or “did not kill them.”
- The expression “they risked their lives” could be translated as, “they put themselves in danger” or “they did something that could have killed them.”
- When the Bible text talks about being alive spiritually, “life” could be translated as “spiritual life” or “eternal life,” depending on the context.
- The concept of “spiritual life” could also be translated as, “God making us alive in our spirits” or “new life by God’s Spirit” or “being made alive in our inner self.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “give life” could also be translated as, “cause to live” or “give eternal life” or “cause to live eternally.”

(See also: [death](#), [die](#), [dead](#), [everlasting](#), [eternal](#), [eternity](#))

**Bible References:**

Waiting

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- [01-10] So God took some dirt, formed it into a man, and breathed **life** into him.
- [03-01] After a long time, many people were **living** in the world.
- [08-13] When Joseph's brothers returned home and told their father, Jacob, that Joseph was still **alive**, he was very happy.
- [17-09] However, toward the end of his [David's] **life** he sinned terribly before God.
- [27-01] One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, "Teacher, what must I do to inherit eternal **life**?"
- [37-05] Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the **Life**."
- [44-05] "You are the ones who told the Roman governor to kill Jesus. You killed the author of **life**, but God raised him from the dead."



## light

### Definition:

There are several figurative uses of the term “light” in the Bible. It is often used as a metaphor for righteousness, holiness, and truth. (See: [Metaphor](#))

- Jesus said, “I am the light of the world” to express that he brings God’s true message to the world and rescues people from the darkness of their sin.
- Christians are commanded to “walk in the light,” which means they should be living the way God wants them to and avoiding evil.
- The apostle John stated that “God is light,” and there is no darkness in him.
- Light and darkness are completely opposite. Darkness is the absence of all light.
- Jesus said that he is “the light of the world” and that his followers should shine like lights in the world, by living in a way that clearly shows how great God is.
- “Walking in the light” represents living in a way that pleases God, doing what is good and right. Walking in darkness represents living in rebellion against God, doing evil things.

### Translation Suggestions:

- When translating, it is important to keep the literal terms “light” and “darkness” even when they are used figuratively.
- It may be necessary to explain the comparison in the text. For example, “walk as children of light” could be translated as, “live openly righteous lives, like someone who walks in bright sunlight.”
- Make sure that the translation of “light” does not refer to an object that gives light, such as a lamp. The translation of this term should refer to the light itself.

(See also: [darkness](#), [holy](#), [holiness](#), [righteous](#), [righteousness](#), [true](#), [truth](#), [come true](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

**lion****Definition:**

A lion is a large, cat-like, wild animal, with powerful teeth and claws for killing and tearing apart its prey.

- Lions have powerful bodies and great speed to catch their prey. Their fur is short and golden-brown in color.
- Male lions have a mane of hair that encircles their heads.
- Lions kill other animals to eat them and can also be dangerous to human beings.
- When King David was a boy, he killed lions who tried to attack the sheep he was caring for.
- Samson also killed a lion with his bare hands.

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [David](#), [leopard](#), [Samson](#), [sheep](#), [ram](#), [ewe](#))

**Bible References:**

Waiting

## livestock

### Facts:

The term “livestock” refers to animals which are raised to provide food and other useful products. Some types of livestock are also trained as work animals.

- Kinds of livestock include sheep, cattle, goats, horses, and donkeys.
- In Biblical times, wealth was partly measured by how much livestock a person had.
- Livestock are used for production of products such as wool, milk, cheese, housing materials, and clothing.
- This could also be translated as, “farm animals.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [cow](#), [calf](#), [bull](#), [cattle](#), [donkey](#), [mule](#), [goat](#), [kid](#), [horse](#), [ox](#), [oxen](#), [sheep](#), [ram](#), [ewe](#),

### Bible References:

Waiting

## lord, master, sir

### Definition:

The term “lord” refers to someone who has ownership or authority over other people.

- This word is sometimes translated as “master” when addressing Jesus or when referring to someone who owns slaves.
- Some English versions translate this as “sir” in contexts where someone is politely addressing someone of higher status.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term should be translated as “master” when it refers to a person who owns slaves. It could also be used by a servant to address the person he works for.
- When it refers to Jesus, it could be translated as “master” if the context shows it means “religious teacher.”
- If the person addressing Jesus does not know him, “lord” could be translated as “sir.” This translation would also be used for other contexts in which a polite form of address to a man is called for.
- When referring to God the Father or to Jesus, this term is written as “Lord” (capitalized).

(See also: [Lord](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[25-05]** But Jesus replied to Satan by quoting from the Scriptures. He said, “In God’s word, he commands his people, ‘Do not test the **Lord** your God.’”
- **[25-07]** Jesus replied, “Get away from me, Satan! In God’s word he commands his people, ‘Worship only the **Lord** your God and only serve him.’”
- **[26-03]** This is the year of the **Lord’s** favor.
- **[27-02]** The law expert replied that God’s law says, “Love the **Lord** your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind.”
- **[31-05]** Then Peter said to Jesus, “**Master**, if it is you, command me to come to you on the water”
- **[43-09]** “But know for certain that God has caused Jesus to become both **Lord** and Messiah!”
- **[47-03]** By means of this demon she predicted the future for people, she made a lot of money for her **masters** as a fortuneteller.
- **[47-11]** Paul answered, “Believe in Jesus, the **Master**, and you and your family will be saved.”
-

## love

### Definition:

To love another person is to care for that person and do things that will benefit him. There are different meanings for “love” which some languages may express using different words:

1. The kind of love that comes from God is focused on the good of others, even when it doesn’t benefit oneself. This kind of love cares for others, no matter what they do. God himself is love and is the source of true love.

- Jesus showed this kind of love by sacrificing his life in order to rescue us from sin and death. He also taught his followers to love others sacrificially.
- When people love others with this kind of love, it involves actions that show that someone is thinking of what will cause the other person to thrive. This kind of love especially includes forgiving others.
- In the ULB, the word “love” refers to this kind of sacrificial love, unless a Translation Note indicates a different meaning.

2. Another word in the New Testament refers to brotherly love or love for a friend or family member.

- This term refers to natural human love between friends or relatives.
- It can also be used in such contexts as, “They love to sit in the most important seats at a banquet.” This means that they “like very much” or “greatly desire” to do that.

3. The word “love” can also refer to romantic love between a man and a woman.

4. In the figurative expression, “Jacob I have loved, but Esau I have hated,” the term “loved” refers to God’s choosing of Jacob to be in a covenant relationship with him. This could also be translated as “chosen.” Although Esau was also blessed by God, he wasn’t given the privilege of being in the covenant. The term “hated” is used figuratively here to mean “rejected” or “not chosen.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- Unless indicated otherwise in a Translation Note, the word “love” in the ULB refers to the kind of sacrificial love that comes from God.
- Some languages may have a special word for the kind of unselfish, sacrificial love that God has. Ways to translate this might include, “devoted, faithful caring” or “care for unselfishly” or “love from God.” Make sure that the word used to translate God’s love can include giving up one’s own interests to benefit others and loving others no matter what they do.
- Sometimes the English word “love” describes the deep caring that people have for friends and family members. Some languages might translate this with a word or phrase that means, “like very much” or “care for” or “have strong affection for.”
- In contexts where the word “love” is used to express a strong preference for something, this could be translated by “strongly prefer” or “like very much” or “greatly desire.”

- Some languages may also have a separate word that refers to romantic or sexual love between a husband and wife.
- Many languages must express “love” as an action. So for example, they might translate “love is patient, love is kind” as, “when a person loves someone, he is patient with him and kind to him.”

(See also: [covenant](#), [death](#), [die](#), [dead](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#), [save](#), [safe](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- [27-02] The law expert replied that God’s law says, “**Love** the Lord your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind. And **love** your neighbor as yourself.”
- [33-08] “The thorny ground is a person who hears God’s word, but, as time passes, the cares, riches, and pleasures of life choke out his **love** for God.”
- [36-05] As Peter was talking, a bright cloud came down on top of them and a voice from the cloud said, “This is my Son whom I **love**.”
- [39-10] “Everyone who **loves** the truth listens to me.”
- [47-01] She (Lydia) **loved** and worshiped God.
- [48-01] When God created the world, everything was perfect. There was no sin. Adam and Eve **loved** each other, and they **loved** God.
- [49-03] He (Jesus) taught that you need to **love** other people the same way you love yourself.
- [49-04] He (Jesus) also taught that you need to **love** God more than you **love** anything else, including your wealth.
- [49-07] Jesus taught that God **loves** sinners very much.
- [49-09] But God **loved** everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with God forever.
- [49-13] God **loves** you and wants you to believe in Jesus so he can have a close relationship with you.

## **messenger**

### **Facts:**

The term, “messenger” refers to someone who is given a message to tell others.

- In ancient times, a messenger would be sent from the battlefield to tell people back in the city what was happening.
- An angel is a special kind of messenger whom God sends to give people messages. Some translations translate “angel” as “messenger.”
- John the Baptist was called a messenger who came before Jesus to announce the Messiah’s coming and to prepare people to receive him.
- Jesus’ apostles were his messengers to go share with other people the good news about the kingdom of God.

(See also: [angel](#), [archangel](#), [apostle](#), [apostleship](#), [John \(the Baptist\)](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## mighty, might

### Definition:

The terms “mighty” and “might” refer to having great strength or power.

- Often the word “might” is another word for “strength.” When talking about God, it can mean “power.”
- The phrase, “mighty men” often refers to men who are courageous and victorious in battle. David’s band of faithful men who helped protect and defend him were often called “mighty men.”
- God is also referred to as the “mighty one.”
- The phrase, “mighty works” usually refers to the amazing things God does, especially miracles.
- This term is related to the term, “almighty,” which is a common description for God, meaning that he has complete power.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “mighty” could be translated as “powerful” or “amazing” or “very strong.”
- The phrase “his might” could be translated as “his strength” or “his power.”
- In Acts 7, Moses is described as a man who was “mighty in word and deed.” This could be translated as, “Moses spoke powerful words from God and did miraculous things” or “Moses spoke God’s word powerfully and did many amazing things.”
- Depending on the context, “mighty works” could be translated as, “amazing things that God does” or “miracles” or “God doing things with power.”
- The term “might” could also be translated as “power” or “great strength.”
- Do not confuse this term with the English word that is used to express a possibility, as in “It might rain.”

(See also: [Almighty](#), [miracle](#), [wonder](#), [sign](#), [power](#), [powers](#), [strength](#), [strengthen](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting



## mind

### Definition:

The term “mind” refers to the part of a person that thinks and makes decisions.

- The mind of each person is the total of his or her thoughts and reasoning.
- To “have the mind of Christ” means to be thinking and acting as Jesus Christ would think and act. It means being obedient to God the Father, obeying the teachings of Christ, being enabled to do this through the power of the Holy Spirit.
- To “change his mind” means someone made a different decision or had a different opinion than he had previously.

### Translation Suggestions

- The term “mind” could also be translated as “thoughts” or “reasoning” or “thinking” or “understanding.”
- The expression, “keep in mind” could be translated as, “remember” or “pay attention to this” or “be sure to know this.”
- The expression, “heart, soul, and mind” could also be translated as, “what you feel, what you believe, and what you think about.”
- The expression “call to mind” could be translated as, “remember” or “think about.”
- The expression, “changed his mind and went” could also be translated as, “decided differently and went” or “decided to go after all” or “changed his opinion and went.”

(See also: [believe](#), [believe in](#), [belief](#), [heart](#), [soul](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## **mourn, mourning**

### **Facts:**

The terms “mourn” and “mourning” refer to expressing deep grief, usually in response to the death of someone.

- In many cultures, mourning includes specific outward behaviors that show this sadness and grief.
- The Israelites and other people groups in ancient times expressed mourning through loud wailing and lamenting. They also wore rough clothing made of sackcloth and put ashes on themselves.
- Hired mourners, usually women, would loudly weep and wail from the time of death until well after the body was put in the tomb.
- The typical period of mourning was seven days, but could last as long as thirty days (as for Moses and Aaron) or seventy days (as for Jacob).
- The Bible also uses the term figuratively, to talk about “mourning” because of sin. This refers to feeling deeply grieved because sin hurts God and people.

(See also: [sackcloth](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## name

### Definition:

In the Bible, the word “name” is used in several figurative ways.

- In some contexts, “name” can refer to a person’s reputation, as in, “let us make a name for ourselves.”
- The term “name” can also refer to the memory of something. For example, “cut off the names of the idols” means to destroy those idols so that they are no longer remembered or worshiped.
- Speaking “in the name of God” means speaking with his power and authority, or as his representative.
- The “name” of someone can refer to the entire person, as in “there is no other name under heaven by which we must be saved.” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Suggestions:

- An expression like, “his good name” could be translated as “his good reputation.”
- Doing something “in the name of” could be translated as, “with the authority of” or “with the permission of” or “as the representative of” that person.
- The expression, “make a name for ourselves” could be translated, “cause many people to know about us” or “make people think we are very important.”
- The expression, “call his name” could be translated as, “name him” or “give him the name.”
- The expression, “those who love your name” could be translated as, “those who love you.”
- The expression, “cut off the names of idols” could be translated as “get rid of pagan idols so that they are not even remembered” or “cause people to stop worshiping false gods” or “completely destroy all idols so that people no longer even think about them.”

(See: [call](#), [calling](#), [called](#), [call out](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## neighbor

### Definition:

The term “neighbor” usually refers to a person who lives nearby. It can also refer more generally to someone who lives in the same community or people group.

- A “neighbor” is someone who would be protected and treated kindly because he is part of the same community.
- In the New Testament parable of the Good Samaritan, Jesus used the term “neighbor” figuratively, expanding its meaning to include all human beings, even someone who is considered an enemy.
- If possible, it is best to translate this term literally with a word or phrase that means “person who lives nearby.”

(See also: [adversary](#), [enemy](#), [parable](#), [people group](#), [peoples](#), [the people](#), [a people](#), [Samaria](#), [Samaritan](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## **noble, nobleman**

### **Definition:**

The term “noble” refers to something that is excellent and of high quality. A “nobleman” is a person who belongs to a higher political or social class.

- A nobleman was often an officer of the state, a close servant to the king.
- The term “nobleman” could also be translated by, “king’s official” or “government officer” or “man of noble birth.”

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## **oath, swear, swear by**

### **Definition:**

In the Bible, an oath is a formal promise to do something. The person making the oath is required to fulfill that promise. An oath involves a commitment to being faithful and truthful.

- Often in a court of law, a witness gives an oath to promise that whatever he says will be true and factual.
- In the Bible, the term “swear” means to speak an oath.
- The term “swear by” means to use the name of something or someone as the basis or power on which the oath is made.
- Sometimes these terms are used together as in, “swear an oath.”
- Abraham and Abimelech swore an oath when they made a covenant together concerning the use of a well.
- Abraham told his servant to swear (formally promise) that he would find Isaac a wife from among Abraham’s relatives.
- God also made oaths in which he made promises to his people.
- A modern-day use of the word “swear” means to use foul language. This is not its meaning in the Bible.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, “an oath” could also be translated as “a pledge” or “a solemn promise.”
- “To swear” could be translated by “to formally promise” or “to pledge” or “to commit to do something.”
- Other ways to translate “swear by my name” could include, “make a promise using my name to confirm it.”
- To “swear by heaven and earth” could be translated as, “promise to do something, stating that heaven and earth will confirm it.”
- Make sure the translation of “swear” or “oath” does not refer to cursing. In the Bible it does not have that meaning.

(See also: [Abimelech](#), [covenant](#), [vow](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## obey, obedient, obedience

### Definition:

The term “obey” means to do what is required or commanded. The term “obedient” describes the character of someone who obeys. Sometimes the command is about not doing something, as in, “do not steal.”

- Usually the term “obey” is used in the context of obeying the commands or laws of a person in authority.
- For example, people obey laws which are created by the leaders of a country, kingdom, or other organization.
- Children obey their parents, slaves obey their masters, people obey God, and citizens obey the laws of their country.
- When someone in authority commands people not to do something, they obey by not doing that.
- Ways to translate this term could include a word or phrase that means, “do what is commanded” or “follow orders” or “do what God says to do.”
- The term “obedient” could be translated as, “doing what was commanded” or “following orders” or “doing what God commands.”

(See also: [citizen](#), [command](#), [to command](#), [commandment](#), [disobey](#), [disobedient](#), [disobedience](#), [kingdom](#), [law](#), [principle](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[03-04]** Noah **obeyed** God. He and his three sons built the boat just the way God had told them.
- **[05-06]** Again Abraham **obeyed** God and prepared to sacrifice his son.
- **[05-10]** “Because you (Abraham) have **obeyed** me, all the families of the world will be blessed through your family”
- **[11-06]** But the Egyptians did not believe God or **obey** his commands.
- **[13-07]** If the people **obeyed** these laws, God promised that he would bless and protect them.

**oil****Definition:**

Oil is a thick, clear liquid that is taken from certain plants or fruits. In Bible times, oil usually came from olives.

- Olive oil was used for cooking, anointing, sacrifice, lamps, and medicine.
- In ancient times, olive oil was highly prized and the possession of oil was considered a measurement of wealth.
- Make sure the translation of this term refers to the kind of oil that can be used in cooking, not motor oil. Some languages have different words for these different kinds of oil.

(See also: [olive](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#))

**Bible References:**

Waiting



## **oppress, oppression, oppressor**

### **Definition:**

The terms “oppress” and “oppression” refer to treating people harshly. An “oppressor” is a person who oppresses people.

- The term “oppression” especially refers to a situation where people of greater strength mistreat or enslave people who are under their power or rule.
- The term “oppressed” describes the people who are being harshly treated.
- Often enemy nations and their rulers were oppressors to the people of Israel.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, “oppress” could be translated by, “severely mistreat” or “cause to be heavily burdened” or “put under miserable bondage” or “rule harshly.”
- Ways to translate “oppression” could include, “heavy suppression and bondage” or “burdensome control.”
- The phrase “the oppressed” could be translated as “oppressed people” or “people in terrible bondage” or “those who are treated harshly.”
- The term “oppressor” could be translated as “person who oppresses” or “nation who controls and rules harshly” or “persecutor.”

(See also: [bind](#), [bond](#), [bound](#), [enslave](#), [in bondage](#), [persecute](#), [persecution](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## palace

### Definition:

The term “palace” refers to the building or house where a king lived, along with his family members and servants.

- The high priest also lived in a palace complex, as mentioned in the New Testament.
- Palaces were very ornate, with beautiful architecture and furnishings.
- The buildings and furnishings of a palace were constructed of stone or wood, and often were overlaid with expensive wood, gold, or ivory.
- Many other people also lived and worked in the palace complex, which usually included several buildings and courtyards.

(See also: [courtyard](#), [court](#), [high priest](#), [king](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## **patient, patience**

### **Definition:**

The terms “patient” and “patience” refer to persevering through difficult circumstances. Often patience involves waiting.

- When people are patient with someone, it means they are loving that person and forgiving whatever faults that person has.
- The Bible teaches God’s people to be patient when facing difficulties and to be patient with each other.
- Because of his mercy, God is patient with people, even though they are sinners who deserve to be punished.

(See also: [endure](#), [endurance](#), [forgive](#), [forgiveness](#), [persevere](#), [perseverance](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## peace, peaceful

### Definition:

The term “peace” refers to a state of being or a feeling of having no conflict, anxiety, or fearfulness. A person who is “peaceful” feels calm and assured of being safe and secure.

- “Peace” can also refer to a time when people groups or countries are not at war with each other. These people are said to have “peaceful relations.”
- To “make peace” with a person or a group of people means to take actions to cause fighting to stop.
- A “peacemaker” is someone who does and says things to influence people to live at peace with each other.
- To be “at peace” with other people means being in a state of not fighting against those people.
- A good or right relationship between God and people happens when God saves people from their sin. This is called having “peace with God.”
- The greeting “grace and peace” was used by the apostles in their letters to their fellow believers as a blessing.
- The term “peace” can also refer to being in a good relationship with other people or with God.

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- [15-06] God had commanded the Israelites not to make a **peace** treaty with any of the people groups in Canaan.
- [15-12] Then God gave Israel **peace** along all its borders.
- [16-03] Then God provided a deliverer who rescued them from their enemies and brought **peace** to the land.
- [21-13] He (Messiah) would die to receive the punishment for other people’s sin. His punishment would bring **peace** between God and people.
- [48-14] David was the king of Israel, but Jesus is the king of the entire universe! He will come again and rule his kingdom with justice and **peace**, forever.
- [50-17] Jesus will rule his kingdom with **peace** and justice, and he will be with his people forever.

## **perish, perishing, perishable**

### **Definition:**

The term “perish” means to die or be destroyed, usually as the result of violence or other disaster. In the Bible, it especially has the meaning of being punished for eternity in hell.

- People who are “perishing” are those who are destined for hell because they have refused to believe in Jesus for their salvation.
- John 3:16 teaches that “perish” means to not live eternally in heaven.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include, “die eternally” or “be punished in hell” or “be destroyed.”
- Make sure that the translation of “perish” can mean living eternally in hell and does not only mean “cease to exist.”

(See also: [death](#), [die](#), [dead](#), [everlasting](#), [eternal](#), [eternity](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

**pit****Definition:**

A pit is a deep hole that has been dug in the ground.

- People dig pits for the purpose of trapping animals or finding water.
- A pit can also be used as a temporary place to hold a prisoner.
- Sometimes the phrase “the pit” refers to the grave or to hell. Other times it may refer to “the abyss.”
- A very deep pit can also be called a “cistern.”
- The term “pit” is also used figuratively in phrases such as, “pit of destruction” which describes being trapped in a disastrous situation or being deeply involved in sinful, destructive practices.

(See also: [abyss](#), [hell](#), [lake of fire](#), [prison](#), [prisoner](#), [imprison](#))

**Bible References:**

Waiting

## power, powers

### Definition:

The term “power” refers to the ability to do things or make things happen, often using great strength. “Powers” refers to people or spirits who have great ability to cause things to happen.

- The “power of God” refers to God’s ability to do everything, especially things that are not possible for people to do.
- God has complete power over everything that he has created.
- God gives his people power to do what he wants, so that when they heal people or do other miracles, they do this by the power of God.
- Because Jesus and the Holy Spirit are also God, they have this same power.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “power” could also be translated as “ability” or “strength” or “energy” or “ability to do miracles” or “control.”
- Possible ways to translate the term “powers” could include, “powerful beings” or “controlling spirits” or “those who control others.”
- An expression like “save us from the power of our enemies” could be translated as, “save us from being oppressed by our enemies” or “rescue us from being controlled by our enemies.” In this case, “power” has the meaning of using one’s strength to control and oppress others.

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [Jesus](#), [Jesus Christ](#), [Christ Jesus](#),, [miracle](#), [wonder](#), [sign](#), )

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- [22-05] The angel explained, “The Holy Spirit will come to you, and the **power** of God will overshadow you. So the baby will be holy, the Son of God.”
- [26-01] After overcoming Satan’s temptations, Jesus returned in the **power** of the Holy Spirit to the region of Galilee where he lived.
- [32-15] Immediately Jesus realized that **power** had gone out from him.
- [42-11] Forty days after Jesus rose from the dead, he told his disciples, “Stay in Jerusalem until my Father gives you **power** when the Holy Spirit comes on you.”
- [43-06] “Men of Israel, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the **power** of God, as you have seen and already know.”
- [44-08] Peter answered them, “This man stands before you healed by the **power** of Jesus the Messiah.”

## praise

### Definition:

To praise someone is to express admiration and honor for that person.

- People praise God because of how great he is and because of all the amazing things he has done as the Creator and Savior of the world.
- Praise for God often includes being thankful for what he has done.
- Music and singing is often used as a way to praise God.
- Praising God is part of what it means to worship him.
- The term “to praise” could also be translated as, “to speak well of” or “to highly honor with words” or “to say good things about.”
- The noun “praise” could be translated as, “spoken honor” or “speech that honors” or “speaking good things about.”

(See also: [worship](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[12-13]** The Israelites sang many songs to celebrate their new freedom and to **praise** God because he saved them from the Egyptian army.
- **[17-08]** When David heard these words, he immediately thanked and **praised** God because he had promised David this great honor and many blessings.
- **[22-07]** Zechariah said, “**Praise** God, because he has remembered his people!”
- **[43-13]** They (disciples) enjoyed **praising** God together and they shared everything they had with each other.
- **[47-08]** They put Paul and Silas in the most secure part of the prison and even locked up their feet. Yet in the middle of the night, they were singing songs of **praise** to God.



## **priest, priesthood**

### **Definition:**

In the Bible, a priest was someone who was chosen to offer sacrifices to God on behalf of God's people. The "priesthood" was the name for the office or condition of being a priest.

- In the Old Testament, God chose Aaron and his descendants to be his priests for the people of Israel.
- The "priesthood" was a right and a responsibility that was passed down from father to son in the Levite clan.
- The Israelite priests had the responsibility of offering the people's sacrifices to God, along with other duties in the temple.
- Priests also offered regular prayers to God on behalf of his people and performed other religious rites.
- The priests pronounced formal blessings on people and taught them God's laws.
- In Jesus' time, there were different levels of priests, including the chief priests and the high priest.
- Jesus is our "great high priest" who intercedes for us in God's presence. He offered himself as the ultimate sacrifice for sin. This means that the sacrifices made by human priests are no longer needed.
- In the New Testament, every believer in Jesus is called a "priest" who can come directly to God in prayer to intercede for himself and other people.
- In ancient times, there were also pagan priests who presented offerings to false gods such as Baal.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, the term "priest" could be translated as "sacrifice person" or "God's intermediary" or "sacrificial mediator" or "person God appoints to represent him".
- The translation of "priest" should be different from the translation of "mediator."
- Some translations may prefer to always say something like, "Israelite priest" or "Jewish priest" or "Yahweh's priest" or "priest of Baal" to make it clear that this does not refer to a modern-day type of priest.
- The term used to translate "priest" should be different from the terms for "chief priest" and "high priest" and "Levite" and "prophet."

(See also: [Aaron](#), [chief priests](#), [high priest](#), [mediator](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- [04-07] "Melchizedek, the **priest** of God Most High"
- [13-09] Anyone who disobeyed God's law could bring an animal to the altar in front of the Tent of Meeting as a sacrifice to God. A **priest** would kill the animal and burn it on the altar. The blood of the animal that was sacrificed covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight. God chose Moses' brother, Aaron, and Aaron's descendants to be his **priests**.
- [19-07] So the **priests** of Baal prepared a sacrifice but did not light the fire.
- [21-07] An Israelite **priest** was someone who made sacrifices to God on behalf of the people as a substitute for the punishment of their sins. **Priests** also prayed to God for the people.

## **prison, prisoner, imprison**

### **Definition:**

The term “prison” refers to a place where criminals are kept as a punishment for their crimes. A “prisoner” is someone who has been put in the prison.

- A person may be kept in a prison while waiting to be judged in a trial.
- The term “imprisoned” means “kept in a prison” or “kept in captivity.”
- Many prophets and other servants of God were put in prison even though they had not done anything wrong.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Another word for “prison” is “jail.”
- This term could also be translated as “dungeon” in contexts where the prison is probably underground or beneath the main part of a palace or other building.
- The term “prisoners” can also refer in general to people who have been captured by an enemy and kept somewhere against their will. Another way to translate this meaning would be “captives.”
- Other ways to translate “imprisoned” could be, “kept as a prisoner” or “kept in captivity” or “held captive.”

(See also: [captive](#), [captivity](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## **profit, profitable**

### **Definition:**

In general, the terms “profit” and “profitable” refer to gaining something good through doing certain actions or behaviors.

refers to something good that is gained. Something is “profitable” to someone if it brings them good things or if it helps them bring about good things for other people.

- More specifically, the term “profit” often refers to money that is gained from doing business. A business is “profitable” if it gains more money than it spends.
- Actions are profitable if they bring about good things for people.
- 2 Timothy 3:16 says that all Scripture is “profitable” for correcting and training people in righteousness. This means that the Bible’s teachings are helpful and useful for teaching people to live according to God’s will.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, the term “profit” could also be translated as “benefit” or “help” or “gain.”
- The term “profitable” could be translated as “useful” or “beneficial” or “helpful.”
- To “profit from” something could be translated as “benefit from” or “gain money from” or “receive help from.”
- In the context of a business, “profit” could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “money gained” or “surplus of money” or “extra money.”

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## **prosper, prosperity, prosperous**

### **Definition:**

The term “prosper” generally refers to living well and can refer to prospering physically or spiritually. When people or a country are “prosperous,” it means they are wealthy and have all that they need to be successful. They are experiencing “prosperity.”

- The term “prosperous” often refers to success in owning money and property or in producing everything needed for people to live well.
- In the Bible, the term “prosperous” also includes good health and being blessed with children.
- A “prosperous” city or country is one that has many people, good production of food, and businesses that bring in plenty of money.
- The Bible teaches that a person will prosper spiritually when he obeys God’s teachings. He will also experience the blessings of joy and peace. God does not always give people a lot of material wealth, but he will always prosper them spiritually as they follow his ways.
- Depending on the context, the term “prosper” could also be translated as “succeed spiritually” or “be blessed by God” or “experience good things” or “live well.”
- The term “prosperous” could also be translated as “successful” or “wealthy” or “spiritually fruitful.”
- “Prosperity” could also be translated as, “well-being” or “wealth” or “success” or “abundant blessings.”

(See also: [bless](#), [blessed](#), [blessing](#), [fruit](#), [fruitful](#), [spirit](#), [spiritual](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## proud, pride, prideful

### Definition:

The terms “proud” and “prideful” refer to a person thinking too highly of himself, and especially, thinking that he is better than other people.

- A proud person often does not admit his own faults. He is not humble.
- Pride can lead to disobeying God in other ways.
- The terms “proud” and “pride” can also be used in a positive sense, such as being “proud of” what someone else has achieved and being “proud of” your children. The expression, “take pride in your work” means to find joy in doing your work well.
- Someone can be proud of what he has done without being prideful about it. Some languages have different words for these two different meanings of “pride.”
- The term “prideful” is always negative, with the meaning of being “arrogant” or “conceited” or “self-important.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- The noun “pride” could be translated as, “arrogance” or “conceit” or “self-importance.”
- In other contexts, “pride” could be translated as, “joy” or “satisfaction” or “pleasure.”
- To be “proud of” could also be translated as, “happy with” or “satisfied with” or “joyful about (the accomplishments of).”
- The phrase “take pride in your work” could be translated as, “find satisfaction in doing your work well.”
- The expression, “take pride in Yahweh” could also be translated as, “be delighted about all the wonderful things Yahweh has done” “be happy about how amazing Yahweh is.”

(See also: [arrogant](#), [humble](#), [humility](#), [joy](#), [joyful](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- [04-02] They were very **proud**, and they did not care about what God said.
- [34-10] Then Jesus said, “I tell you the truth, God heard the tax collector’s prayer and declared him to be righteous. But he did not like the prayer of the religious leader. God will humble everyone who is **proud**, and he will lift up whoever humbles himself.”

## **proverb**

### **Definition:**

A proverb is a short statement that expresses some wisdom or truth.

- Proverbs are powerful because they are easy to remember and repeat.
- Often a proverb will include practical examples from everyday life.
- Some proverbs are very clear and direct, while others are more difficult to understand.
- King Solomon was known for his wisdom and wrote over 1,000 proverbs.
- Jesus often used proverbs or parables when he taught people.
- Ways to translate “proverb” could include, “wise saying” or “true word.”

(See also: [Solomon](#), [true](#), [truth](#), [come true](#), [wise](#), [wisdom](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## **province, provincial**

### **Facts:**

A province is a division or part of a nation or empire. The term “provincial” describes something that is related to a province, such as a provincial governor.

- For example, the ancient Persian Empire was divided up into provinces such as Media, Persia, Syria, and Egypt.
- During the time of the New Testament, the Roman Empire was divided up into provinces such as Macedonia, Asia, Syria, Judea, Samaria, Galilee, and Galatia.
- Each province had its own ruling authority, who was subject to the king or ruler of the empire. This ruler was sometimes called a “provincial official” or “provincial governor.”
- The terms “province” and “provincial” could also be translated as “region” and “regional.”

(See also: [Asia](#), [Egypt](#), [Egyptian](#), [EstherGalatia](#), [Galilee](#), [Galilean](#), [Judea](#), [Macedonia](#), [Medes](#), [Media](#), [Rome](#), [Roman](#), [Samaria](#), [Samaritan](#), [Syria](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting



## **raise, rise, risen, arise, arose**

### **Definition:**

#### **raise, raise up**

In general, the word “raise” means to “lift up” or “make higher.”

- The figurative phrase, “raise up” means to cause something to come into being or to appear. It can also mean to appoint someone to do something.
- Sometimes “raise up” means to “restore” or “rebuild.”
- “Raise” has a specialized meaning in the phrase, “raise from the dead.” It means to cause a dead person to become alive again.
- Sometimes “raise up” means to “exalt” someone or something.

#### **rise, arise**

To “rise” or “arise” means to “go up” or “get up.” The terms “risen,” “rose” and “arose” are used for expressing past action.

- When a person gets up to go somewhere, this is sometimes expressed as, “he arose and went” or “he rose up and went.”
- If something “arises” it means it “happens” or “begins to happen.”
- Jesus predicted that he would “rise from the dead.” Three days after Jesus died, the angel said, “He has risen”!

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- The term “raise” or “raise up” can be translated as “to lift up” or “to make higher.”
- To “raise up” could also be translated as, “to cause to appear” or “to appoint” or “to bring into existence.”
- To “raise up the strength of your enemies” could be translated as, “cause your enemies to be very strong.”
- The phrase “raise someone from the dead,” could be translated as “cause someone to return from death to life” or “cause someone to come back to life.”
- Depending on the context, “raise up” could also be translated as, “provide” or “appoint” or “cause to have” or “build up” or “rebuild” or “repair.”
- The phrase “arose and went” could be translated as “got up and went” or “went.”
- Depending on the context, the term “arose” could also be translated as “began” or “started up” or “got up” or “stood up.”

(See also: [resurrection](#), [appoint](#), [appointed](#), [exalt](#), [exaltation](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- [21-14] The prophets foretold that the Messiah would die and that God would also **raise** him from the dead.
- [41-05] "Jesus is not here. He has **risen** from the dead, just like he said he would!"
- [43-07] "Although Jesus died, God **raised** him from the dead. This fulfills the prophecy which says, 'You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.' We are witnesses to the fact that God **raised** Jesus to life again."
- [44-05] "You killed the author of life, but God **raised** him from the dead. "
- [44-08] Peter answered them, "This man stands before you healed by the power of Jesus the Messiah. You crucified Jesus, but God **raised** him to life again!"
- [48-04] This meant that Satan would kill the Messiah, but God would **raise** him to life again, and then the Messiah will crush the power of Satan forever.
- [49-02] He (Jesus) walked on water, calmed storms, healed many sick people, drove out demons, **raised** the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.
- [49-12] You must believe that Jesus is the Son of God, that he died on the cross instead of you, and that God **raised** him to life again.

## rebuke

### Definition:

To rebuke is to give someone a stern verbal correction, often in order to help that person turn away from sin.

- The New Testament commands Christians to rebuke other believers when they are clearly disobeying God.
- The book of Proverbs instructs parents to rebuke their children when they are disobedient.
- A rebuke is typically given to prevent the one who committed the wrong from involving themselves further in sin.
- This could be translated by, “sternly correct” or “admonish.”
- The phrase “a rebuke” could be translated by, “a stern correction” or “a strong criticism.”
- “Without rebuke” could be translated as, “without admonishing” or “without criticism.”

(See also [admonish](#), [disobey](#), [disobedient](#), [disobedience](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## receive

### Definition:

The term “receive” generally means to get or accept something that is given, offered, or presented.

- To “receive” can also mean to suffer or experience something, as in “he received punishment for what he did.”
- There is also a special sense in which we can “receive” a person. For example, to “receive” guests or visitors means to welcome them and to treat them with honor in order to build a relationship with them.
- To “receive the gift of the Holy Spirit” means we are given the Holy Spirit and welcome him to work in and through our lives.
- To “receive Jesus” means to accept God’s offer of salvation through Jesus Christ.
- When a blind person “receives his sight” means that God healed him and enabled him to see.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “receive” can be translated as “accept” or “welcome” or “experience” or “be given.”
- The expression, “you will receive power” could be translated as, “you will be given power” or “God will give you power” or “power will be given to you (by God)” or “God will cause the Holy Spirit to work powerfully in you.”
- The phrase “received his sight” could also be translated as, “was able to see” or “became able to see again” or “God healed him so that he was able to see.”

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [Jesus](#), [Jesus Christ](#), [Christ Jesus](#), [lord](#), [master](#), [sir](#), [save](#), [safe](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- [21-13] The prophets also said that the Messiah would be perfect, having no sin. He would die to **receive** the punishment for other people’s sin. His punishment would bring peace between God and people.
- [45-05] As Stephen was dying, he cried out, “Jesus, **receive** my spirit.”
- [49-06] He (Jesus) taught that some people will receive him and be saved, but others will not.
- [49-10] When Jesus died on the cross, he **received** your punishment.
- [49-13] God will save everyone who believes in Jesus and **receives** him as their Master.

## rejoice

### Definition:

The term “rejoice” means to be full of joy and gladness.

- This term often refers to being very happy about the good things that God has done.
- It could be translated as, “be very happy” or “be very glad” or “be full of joy.”
- When Mary said, “my soul rejoices in God my Savior” she meant, “God my Savior has made me very happy” or “I feel so joyful because of what God my Savior has done for me.”

(See also: [joy](#), [joyful](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## rest

### Definition:

The term “to rest” literally means to stop working in order to relax or regain strength. The phrase “the rest of” refers to the remainder of something.

- An object can be said to be “resting” somewhere, which means it is “standing” or “sitting” there.
- A boat that “comes to rest” somewhere has “stopped” or “landed” there.
- When a person or animal rests, it can mean that they are sitting or lying down in order to refresh themselves.
- God commanded the Israelites to rest on the seventh day of the week. This day of not working was called the “Sabbath” day.
- To rest an object on something means to “place” or “put” it there.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “to rest (oneself)” could also be translated as “to stop working” or “to refresh himself” or “to stop carrying burdens.”
- To “rest” an object on something could be translated as to “place” or “put” or “set” that object on something.
- When Jesus said, “I will give you rest,” this could also be translated as, “I will cause you to stop carrying your burden” or “I will help you be at peace” or “I will empower you to relax and trust in me.”
- When God says, “they will not enter my rest,” this could be translated as, “they will not experience my blessings of rest” or “they will not experience the joy and peace that comes from trusting in me.”
- The term “the rest” could be translated as “those that remain” or “all the other people” or “everything that is left.”

(See also: [remnant](#), [Sabbath](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## reward

### Definition:

The term “reward” refers to what a person receives because of something he has done, either good or bad. “To reward” someone is to give someone something he deserves.

- A reward can be a good or positive thing that a person receives because of doing something well or because he has obeyed God.
- Sometimes a reward can refer to negative things that may result from bad behavior, such as the statement, “the reward of the wicked.” In this context, “reward” refers to punishment or negative consequences from sinful actions.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “reward” could be translated as “payment” or “something that is deserved” or “punishment.”
- “To reward” someone could be translated by “to repay” or “to punish” or “to give what is deserved.”
- Make sure the translation of this term does not refer to wages. A reward is not specifically about earning money as part of a job.

(See also: [punish](#), [punishment](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## righteous, righteousness

### Definition:

The terms “righteous” and “righteousness” refer to God’s absolute goodness, justice, faithfulness, and love. Because God is righteous, he must condemn sin.

- These terms are also often used to describe a person who obeys God and is morally good. However, because all people have sinned, no one except God is completely righteous.
- Examples of people who the Bible calls “righteous” include Noah, Job, Abraham, Zachariah, and Elisabeth.
- When people trust in Jesus to save them, God cleanses them from their sins and declares them to be righteous based on Jesus’ righteousness.

### Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to God, the term “righteous” could be translated as “perfectly good and just” or “always acting rightly.”
- God’s “righteousness” could also be translated as, “perfect faithfulness and goodness.”
- When referring to people who are obedient to God, the term “righteous” could also be translated as “morally good” or “just” or “living a God-pleasing life.”
- The phrase, “the righteous” could also be translated as, “righteous people” or “God-fearing people.”
- Depending on the context, “righteousness” could also be translated with a word or phrase that means, “goodness” or “being perfect before God” or “acting in a right way by obeying God” or “doing perfectly good
- Sometimes “the righteous” is used figuratively and refers to “people who think they are good” or “people who seem to be righteous.”

(See also: [good](#), [goodness](#), [holy](#), [holiness](#), [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#), [just](#), [justice](#), [justly](#), [faithful](#), [faithfulness](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[03-02]** But Noah found favor with God. He was a **righteous** man, living among wicked people.
- **[04-08]** God declared that Abram was **righteous** because he believed in God’s promise.
- **[17-02]** David was a humble and **righteous** man who trusted and obeyed God.
- **[23-01]** Joseph, the man Mary was engaged to, was a **righteous** man.
- **[50-10]** Then the **righteous** ones will shine like the sun in the kingdom of God their Father.”



## ruler, rulers, rule

### Definition:

The term “ruler” is a general reference to a person who has authority over other people, such as a leader of a country, kingdom, or religious group.

- In the Old Testament, a king was also referred to with the general term “ruler,” as in the phrase, “appointed him ruler over Israel.”
- God is referred to as the ultimate ruler, who rules over all other rulers.
- In the New Testament, the leader of a synagogue was called a “ruler.”
- Another type of ruler in the New Testament was a “governor.”
- Depending on the context, “ruler” could be translated as “leader” or “person who has authority over.”
- The action “to rule” means to “lead” to “have authority over.” It means the same thing as “reign” when referring a king ruling.

(See also: [authority](#), [governor](#), [govern](#), [proconsul](#), [government](#), [king](#), [synagogue](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## sacrifice, offering

### Definition:

In the Bible, the terms “sacrifice” and “offering” refer to special gifts given to God as an act of worshiping him. People also offered sacrifices to false gods.

- The word “offering” generally refers to anything that is offered or given. The term “sacrifice” refers to something that is given or done at great cost to the giver.
- Offerings to God were specific things that he commanded the Israelites to give in order to express devotion and obedience to him.
- The names of the different offerings, such as “burnt offering” and “peace offering,” indicated what kind of offering was being given.
- Sacrifices to God often involved the killing of an animal.
- Only the sacrifice of Jesus, God’s perfect, sinless Son, can completely cleanse people from sin. Animal sacrifices could never do that.
- The figurative expression “offer yourselves as a living sacrifice” means, “live your life in complete obedience to God, giving up everything in order to serve him.”

### Translation Suggestions

- The term “offering” could also be translated as “a gift to God” or “something given to God” or “something valuable that is presented to God.”
- Depending on the context, the term “sacrifice” could also be translated as “something valuable given in worship” or “a special animal killed and presented to God.”
- The action, “to sacrifice” could be translated as, “to give up something valuable” or “to kill an animal and give it to God.”
- Another way to translate “present yourself as a living sacrifice” could be, “As you live your life, offer yourself to God as completely as an animal that is offered on an altar.”

(See also: [altar](#), [burnt offering](#), [offering by fire](#), [drink offering](#), [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [fellowship offering](#), [freewill offering](#) [peace offering](#), [priest](#), [priesthood](#), [sin offering](#), [worship](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[03-14]** After Noah got off the boat, he built an altar and **sacrificed** some of each kind of animal which could be used for a **sacrifice**. God was happy with the **sacrifice** and blessed Noah and his family.

- **[05-06]** "Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a **sacrifice** to me." Again Abraham obeyed God and prepared to **sacrifice** his son.
- **[05-09]** God had provided the ram to be the **sacrifice** instead of Isaac.
- **[13-09]** Anyone who disobeyed God's law could bring an animal to the Tent of Meeting as a **sacrifice** to God. A priest would kill the animal and burn it on the altar. The blood of the animal that was **sacrificed** covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight.
- **[17-06]** David wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him **sacrifices**.
- **[48-06]** Jesus is the Great High Priest. Unlike other priests, he offered himself as the only **sacrifice** that could take away the sin of all the people in the world.
- **[48-08]** But God provided Jesus, the Lamb of God, as a **sacrifice** to die in our place.
- **[49-11]** Because Jesus **sacrificed** himself, God can forgive any sin, even terrible sins.

## save, safe

### Definition:

The term “save” refers to keeping someone from experiencing something bad or harmful. To “be safe” means to be protected from harm or danger.

- In a physical sense, people can be saved or rescued from harm, danger, or death.
- In a spiritual sense, if a person has been “saved,” it means that through Jesus’ death on the cross, God has forgiven him and rescued him from being punished in hell for his sin.
- People can save or rescue people from danger, but only God can save people from being punished eternally for their sins.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “save” could include, “deliver” or “keep from harm” or “take out of harm’s way” or “keep from dying.”
- In the expression, “whoever would save his life,” the term “save” could also be translated as “preserve” or “protect.”
- The term “safe” could be translated as “protected from danger” or “in a place where nothing can harm.”

(See also: [cross](#), [deliver](#), [deliverer](#), [deliverance](#), [punish](#), [punishment](#), [salvation](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[09-08]** Moses tried to **save** his fellow Israelite.
- **[11-02]** God provided a way to **save** the firstborn son of anyone who believed in him.
- **[12-05]** Moses told the Israelites, “Stop being afraid! God will fight for you today and **save** you.”
- **[12-13]** The Israelites sang many songs to celebrate their new freedom and to praise God because he **saved** them from the Egyptian army.
- **[16-17]** This pattern repeated many times: the Israelites would sin, God would punish them, they would repent, and God would send a deliverer to **save** them.
- **[44-08]** “You crucified Jesus, but God raised him to life again! You rejected him, but there is no other way to be **saved** except through the power of Jesus!”
- **[47-11]** The jailer trembled as he came to Paul and Silas and asked, “What must I do to be **saved**?” Paul answered, “Believe in Jesus, the Master, and you and your family will be **saved**.”

- [49-12] Good works cannot **save** you.
- [49-13] God will **save** everyone who believes in Jesus and receives him as their Master. But he will not **save** anyone who does not believe in him.

## seed

### Definition:

A seed is the part of a plant that gets planted in the ground to reproduce more of the same kind of plant. It also has several figurative meanings.

- The term “seed” is used figuratively and euphemistically to refer to the tiny cells inside a man or woman that combine to cause a baby to grow inside the woman.
- Related to this, “seed” is also used to refer to a person’s offspring or descendants.
- This word often has a plural meaning, referring to more than one seed grain or more than one descendant.
- In the parable of the farmer planting seeds, Jesus compared seeds to the Word of God being planted in people’s hearts in order to produce good spiritual fruit.
- The apostle Paul also uses the term “seed” to refer to the Word of God.

### Translation Suggestions:

- For a literal seed, it is best to use the literal term for “seed” that is used in the target language for what a farmer plants in his field.
- The literal term should also be used in contexts where it refers figuratively to God’s Word.
- For the figurative use that refers to people who are of the same family line, it may be more clear to use the word “descendant” or “descendants” instead of seed. Some languages may have a word that means “children and grandchildren.”
- For a man or woman’s “seed,” consider how the target expresses this in a way that will not offend or embarrass people. (See: [euphemism](#))

(See also: [descendant](#), [offspring](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## **servant, slave, slavery**

### **Definition:**

The word for “servant” can also mean “slave” and refers to a person who works for another person, either by choice or by force. The surrounding text usually makes it clear whether a servant or a slave is being referred to.

- In Bible times, there was less of a difference between a servant and a slave than there is today. Both servants and slaves were an important part of their master’s household and many were treated almost like members of the family. Sometimes a servant would choose to become a lifetime servant to his master.
- A slave is a kind of servant who is the property of the person he works for. The person who buys a slave is called his “owner” or “master.” Some masters treat their slaves very cruelly, while other masters treat their slaves very well, like a servant who is a valued member of the household.
- In ancient times, some people willingly became slaves to a person they owed money to in order to pay off their debt to that person.
- In the Bible, the phrase “I am your servant” was used as a sign of respect and service to a person of higher rank, such as a king. It does not mean that the person speaking was an actual servant.
- In the Old Testament, God’s prophets and other people who worshiped God are often referred to as his “servants.”
- In the New Testament, people who obey God through faith in Christ are often called his “servants.”
- Christians are also called “slaves to righteousness,” which is a metaphor that compares the commitment to obey God to a slave’s commitment to obeying his master. (See: [Metaphor](#))

(See also: [commit](#), [committed](#), [commitment](#), [enslave](#), [in bondage](#), [household](#), [lord](#), [master](#), [sir](#), [obey](#), [obedient](#), [obedience](#), [righteous](#), [righteousness](#), [serve](#), [service](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

### **Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **[06-01]** When Abraham was very old and his son, Isaac, had grown to be a man, Abraham sent one of his **servants** back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, Isaac.
- **[08-04]** The **slave** traders sold Joseph as a **slave** to a wealthy government official.
- **[09-13]** ”I (God) will send you (Moses) to Pharaoh so that you can bring the Israelites out of their **slavery** in Egypt.”

- [19-10] Then Elijah prayed, "O Yahweh, God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, show us today that you are the God of Israel and that I am your **servant**."
- [29-03] "Since the **servant** could not pay the debt, the king said, 'Sell this man and his family as **slaves** to make payment on his debt.'"
- [35-06] "All my father's **servants** have plenty to eat, and yet here I am starving."
- [47-04] The **slave** girl kept yelling as they walked, "These men are servants of the Most High God."
- [50-04] Jesus also said, "A **servant** is not greater than his master."



## shadow

### Definition:

The word “shadow” literally refers to the darkness that is caused by an object blocking the light. It also has several figurative meanings.

- The “shadow of death” means that death is present or near, just as a shadow indicates the presence of its object.
- Many times in the Bible, the life of a human being is compared to a shadow, which does not last very long and has no substance.
- Sometimes “shadow” is used as another word for “darkness.”
- The Bible talks about being hidden or protected in the shadow of God’s wings or hands. This is a picture of being protected and hidden from danger. Other ways to translate “shadow” in these contexts could include “shade” or “safety” or “protection.”
- It is best to translate “shadow” literally using the local term that is used to refer to an actual shadow.

(See also: [darkness](#), [light](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## shepherd, to shepherd

### Definition:

A shepherd is a person who takes care of sheep. The verb “to shepherd” means to protect the sheep and provide them with food and water.

- Shepherds watch over the sheep, leading them to places with good food and water. Shepherds also keep the sheep from getting lost and protect them from wild animals.
- This term is often used metaphorically in the Bible to refer to taking care of people’s spiritual needs. This includes teaching them what God has told them in the Bible and guiding them in the way they should live. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- In the Old Testament, God is called the “shepherd” of his people because he takes care of all their needs and protects them. He also leads and guides them.
- Moses was a shepherd for the Israelites as he guided them spiritually in their worship of Yahweh and led them physically on their journey to the land of Canaan.
- In the New Testament, Jesus calls himself the “good shepherd.” The apostle Paul also refers to him as the “great shepherd” over the Church.
- Also in the New Testament, the term “shepherd” is used to refer to a person who is a spiritual leader over other believers. The term “pastor” is the same word as “shepherd.” The elders and overseers were also called shepherds.

### Translation Suggestions

- When used literally, the action “shepherd” could be translated as “take care of sheep” or “watch over sheep.”
- The person “shepherd” could be translated as, “person who takes care of sheep” or “sheep tender” or “sheep caregiver.”
- When used as a metaphor, different ways to translate this term could include, “spiritual shepherd” or “spiritual leader” or “one who is like a shepherd” or “one who cares for his people like a shepherd cares for his sheep” or “one who leads his people like a shepherd guides his sheep” or “one who takes care of God’s sheep.”
- In some contexts, “shepherd” could be translated as “leader” or “guide” or “caregiver.”
- The expression, “to shepherd (a flock)” could be translated as, “to take care of” or “to spiritually nourish” or “to guide and teach” or “to lead and take care of (like a shepherd cares for sheep)”
- In figurative uses, it is best to use or include the literal word for “shepherd” in the translation of this term.

(See also: [believer](#), [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [church](#), [Church](#), [Moses](#), [pastor](#), [sheep](#), [ram](#), [ewe](#), [spirit](#), [spiritual](#))

**Bible References:**

Waiting

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- [09-11] Moses became a **shepherd** in the wilderness far away from Egypt.to
- [17-02] David was a **shepherd** from the town of Bethlehem. At different times while he was watching his father's sheep, David had killed both a lion and a bear that had attacked the sheep.
- [23-06] That night, there were some **shepherds** in a nearby field guarding their flocks.
- [23-08] The **shepherds** soon arrived at the place where Jesus was and they found him lying in a feeding trough, just as the angel had told them.
- [30-03] To Jesus, these people were like sheep without a **shepherd**.

## **siege, besiege**

### **Definition:**

The term “siege” refers to when an attacking army surrounds a city and keeps it from being able to receive any supplies of food and water. To “besiege” a city means to cause that city to be under a siege.

- When Babylon came to attack Israel, they used a siege tactic on Jerusalem to weaken the people inside the city.
- Often during a siege attack, ramps of dirt are gradually constructed to enable the attacking army to cross over the city walls and invade the city.
- The expression “lay siege” means to perform a siege. It has the same meaning as “besiege.”
- The term “besieged” has the same meaning as the expression “under siege.” Both these expressions describe a city that an enemy army is surrounding and besieging.

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## silver

### Definition:

Silver is a shiny, gray precious metal used to make coins, jewelry, containers, and ornaments.

- The containers would include silver cups and bowls, among other things used for cooking, eating, or serving.
- Silver and gold were used in the building of the tabernacle and the temple. The temple in Jerusalem had containers made of silver.
- In Bible times, silver coins and silver weights called shekels were used.
- Joseph's brothers sold him as a slave for twenty shekels of silver.
- Judas was paid thirty silver coins for betraying Jesus.

(See also: [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## sin, sinful, sinner, sinning

### Definition:

The term “sin” refers to actions, thoughts, and words that are against God’s will and laws. Sin can also refer to not doing something that God wants us to do.

- Sin includes anything we do that does not obey or please God, even things that other people don’t know about.
- Thoughts and actions that disobey God’s will are called “sinful.”
- Because Adam sinned, all human beings are born with a sinful nature that controls them.
- A “sinner” is someone who sins, so every human being is a sinner.
- Sometimes the word “sinners” was used by religious people like the Pharisees to refer to people who didn’t keep the law as well as the Pharisees thought they should.
- The term “sinner” was also used for people who were considered to be worse sinners than other people. For example, this label was given to tax collectors and prostitutes.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “sin” could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “disobedience to God” or “going against God’s will” or “evil behavior and thoughts” or “wrongdoing.”
- “To sin” could also be translated as “to disobey God” or “to do wrong.”
- Depending on the context, “sinful” could be translated as “full of wrongdoing” or “wicked” or “immoral” or “evil” or “rebellious against God.”
- Depending on the context, the term “sinner” could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “person who sins” or “person who does wrong things” or “person who disobeys God” or “person who disobeys the law.”
- The term “sinners” could be translated by a word or phrase that means, “very sinful people” or “people considered to be very sinful” or “immoral people.”
- Ways to translate “tax collectors and sinners” could include, “people who collect money for the government, and other very sinful people” or “very sinful people, including (even) tax collectors.”
- In expressions like “slaves to sin” or “ruled by sin,” the term “sin” could be translated as “disobedience” or “evil desires and actions.”
- Make sure the translation of this term can include sinful behavior and thoughts, even those that other people don’t see or know about.
- The term “sin” should be general, and different from the terms for “wickedness” and “evil.”

(See also: [disobey](#), [disobedient](#), [disobedience](#), [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#), [flesh](#), [tax collector](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- \* **[03-15]** God said, "I promise I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are **sinful** from the time they are children."
- \* **[13-12]** God was very angry with them because of their **sin** and planned to destroy them.
- \* **[20-01]** The kingdoms of Israel and Judah both **sinned** against God. They broke the covenant that God made with them at Sinai.
- \* **[21-13]** The prophets also said that the Messiah would be perfect, having no **sin**. He would die to receive the punishment for other people's **sin**.
- \* **[35-01]** One day, Jesus was teaching many tax collectors and other **sinner**s who had gathered to hear him.
- \* **[38-05]** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my blood of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of **sins**."
- \* **[43-11]** Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your **sins**."
- \* **[48-08]** We all deserve to die for our **sins**!
- \* **[49-17]** Even though you are a Christian, you will still be tempted to **sin**. But God is faithful and says that if you confess your **sins**, he will forgive you. He will give you strength to fight against **sin**.

## snare, trap

### Definition:

The terms “snare” and “trap” refer to devices that are used to catch animals and keep them from escaping. In the Bible, these terms are also used figuratively to talk about how sin and temptation are like hidden traps that catch people and harm them.

- A “snare” has a loop of rope or wire that suddenly pulls tight when an animal steps into it, ensnaring its leg.
- A “trap” usually made of metal or wood and has two parts that suddenly and powerfully close together in order to catch an animal so it can’t get away. Sometimes a trap can be a deep hole that has been made in order to get something to fall into it.
- Usually the snare or trap is hidden so that its prey is taken by surprise.
- The phrase “set a trap” means to get a trap ready to capture something.
- To “fall into a trap” refers to falling into a deep hole or pit that was dug and hidden in order to catch an animal.
- When used figuratively, being caught in a trap or snare is compared to how a person can suddenly become ensnared in a sin in the same way that an animal gets captured by a physical snare or trap.
- Just as an animal is endangered and hurt by being in a trap, so a person caught in the trap of sin is being harmed by that sin and needs to be set free.

(See also: [free](#), [freedom](#), [liberty](#), , [prey](#), [to prey on](#), [Satan](#), [devil](#), [evil one](#), [tempt](#), [temptation](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting



## son, son of

### Definition:

The term “son” refers to a boy or man in relation to his parents. It can refer either to someone’s male offspring or to an adopted son.

- “Son” is often used figuratively in the Bible to refer to any male descendant, such as a grandson or great-grandson.
- The term “son” can also be used as a polite form of address to a boy or man who is younger.
- Sometimes “sons of God” is used in the New Testament to refer to believers in Christ.
- God calls Israel his “firstborn son.” This refers to God’s choosing of the nation of Israel to be his special people. It is through them that God’s message of redemption and salvation came, with the result that many other people have become his spiritual children.
- The phrase “son of” often has the figurative meaning, “having the characteristics of.” Examples of this include, “sons of the light,” “sons of disobedience,” “a son of peace,” and “sons of thunder.”
- The phrase “son of” is also used to tell who a person’s father is. This phrase is used in genealogies and many other places.
- Using “son of” to give the name of the father frequently helps distinguish people who have the same name. For example, “Azariah, son of Zadok” and “Azariah, son of Nathan” in 1 Kings 4, and “Azariah, son of Amaziah in 2 Kings 15 are three different men.

### Translation Suggestions:

- In most occurrences of this term, it is best to translate “son” using the literal term in the language that is used to refer to a son.
- When translating the term “Son of God,” the project language’s common term for “son” should be used.
- When used to refer to a descendant rather than a direct son, the term “descendant” could be used, as in referring to Jesus as the “descendant of David” or in genealogies where sometimes “son” refers to a male descendant, not an actual son.
- Sometimes “sons” can be translated as “children,” when both males and females are being referred to. For example, “sons of God” could be translated as “children of God” since this expression also includes girls and women.
- The figurative expression “son of” could also be translated as “someone who has the characteristics of” or “someone who is like” or “someone who has” or “someone who acts like.”

(See also: [Azariah](#), [descendant](#), [descended from](#), [ancestor](#), [father](#), [forefather](#), [firstborn](#), [Son of God](#), [the Son](#), [Son](#), [sons of God](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **[04-08]** God spoke to Abram and promised again that he would have a **son** and as many descendants as the stars in the sky.
- **[04-09]** God said, "I will give you a **son** from your own body."
- **[05-05]** About a year later, when Abraham was 100 years old and Sarah was 90, Sarah gave birth to Abraham's **son**.
- **[05-08]** When they reached the place of sacrifice, Abraham tied up his **son** Isaac and laid him on an altar. He was about to kill his **son** when God said, "Stop! Do not hurt the boy! Now I know that you fear me because you did not keep your only **son** from me."
- **[09-07]** When she saw the baby, she took him as her own **son**.
- **[11-06]** God killed every one of the Egyptians' firstborn **sons**.
- **[18-01]** After many years, David died, and his **son** Solomon began to rule.
- **[26-04]** "Is this the **son** of Joseph?" they said.

## soul

### Definition:

The soul is the inner, invisible, and eternal part of a person. It refers to the non-physical part of a person.

- The terms “soul” and “spirit” may be two different concepts, or they may be two terms that refer to the same concept.
- When a person dies, his soul leaves his body.
- The word “soul” is sometimes used figuratively to refer to the whole person. For example, “the soul who sins” means, “the person who sins” and “my soul is tired” means, “I am tired.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “soul” could also be translated as “inner self” or “inner person.”
- In some contexts, “my soul” could be translated as, “I” or “me.”
- Usually the phrase “the soul” can be translated as “the person” or “he” or “him,” depending on the context.
- Some languages might only have one word for translating the terms “soul” and “spirit.”
- In Hebrews 4:12, the figurative phrase, “dividing soul and spirit” could mean, “deeply discerning or exposing the inner person.”

(See also: [spirit](#), [spiritual](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## spirit, spiritual

### Definition:

The term “spirit” refers to the non-physical part of people which cannot be seen. When a person dies, his spirit leaves his body. “Spirit” can also refer to an attitude or emotional state.

- The term “spirit” can refer to a being that does not have a physical body, especially an evil spirit.
- A person’s spirit is the part of him that can know God and believe in him.
- In general, the term “spiritual” describes anything in the non-physical world.
- In the Bible, it especially refers to anything that relates to God, specifically to the Holy Spirit.
- For example, “spiritual food” refers to God’s teachings that give nourishment to a person’s spirit, “spiritual wisdom” refers to the knowledge and righteous behavior that come from the power of the Holy Spirit.
- God is a spirit and he created other spirit beings who do not have physical bodies.
- Angels are spirit beings, including those who rebelled against God and became evil spirits.
- The term “spirit of” can also mean “having the characteristics of,” such as in, “spirit of wisdom” or “in the spirit of Elijah.”
- Examples of “spirit” as an attitude or emotion would include “spirit of fear” or “spirit of jealousy.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, some ways to translate “spirit” might include, “non-physical being” or “inside part” or “inner being.”
- In some contexts, the term “spirit” could be translated as “evil spirit” or “evil spirit being.”
- Sometimes the term “spirit” is used to express the feelings of a person as in, “my spirit was grieved in my inmost being.” This could also be translated as, “I felt grieved in my spirit” or “I felt deeply grieved.”
- The phrase “spirit of” could be translated as, “character of” or “influence of” or “attitude of” or “thinking (that is) characterized by.”
- Depending on the context, “spiritual” could be translated as, “non-physical” or “from the Holy Spirit” or “God’s” or “part of the non-physical world.”
- The figurative expression “spiritual milk” could also be translated as, “basic teachings from God” or “God’s teachings that nourish the spirit (like milk does).”
- The phrase “spiritual maturity” could be translated as “godly behavior that shows obedience to the Holy Spirit.”
- A “spiritual gift” could be translated as, “special ability that the Holy Spirit gives.”

(See also: [angel](#), [archangel](#), [demon](#), [evil spirit](#), [unclean spirit](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [soul](#))

**Bible References:**

Waiting

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **[13-03]** Three days later, after the people had prepared themselves **spiritually**, God came down on top of Mount Sinai with thunder, lightning, smoke, and a loud trumpet blast.
- **[40-07]** Then Jesus cried out, "It is finished! Father, I give my **spirit** into your hands." Then he bowed his head and gave up his **spirit**.
- **[45-05]** As Stephen was dying, he cried out, "Jesus, receive my **spirit**."
- **[48-07]** All the people groups are blessed through him, because everyone who believes in Jesus is saved from sin, and becomes a **spiritual** descendant of Abraham.

## strength, strengthen

### Facts:

The term “strength” refers to the state of being strong physically, emotionally, or spiritually. To “strengthen” means to make someone or something stronger.

- “Strength” can also refer to being able to stand up against some kind of opposing force.
- A person has strength of will if he is able to not give in to temptation.
- One writer of the Psalms calls Yahweh his strength, which means that God helps him to be strong.
- If a physical structure like a wall or building is “strengthened,” it means that people are rebuilding the structure, to reinforce it with more stones or brick so that it can withstand an attack.

### Translation Suggestions

- In general, the term “strengthen” can be translated as “cause to be strong” or “make more powerful.”
- In a spiritual sense, the phrase, “strengthen your brothers” could also be translated as “encourage your brothers” or “help your brothers to persevere.”
- The following expressions are examples of how this term is used, along with their meanings, which are also alternate ways they can be translated:
  - “puts strength on me like a belt” means, “causes me to be completely strong, like a belt that completely surrounds my waist.”
  - “in quietness and trust will be your strength” means, “acting calmly and trusting in God will make you spiritually strong.”
  - “will renew their strength” means, “will become stronger again.”
  - “by my strength and by my wisdom I acted” means, “I have done all this because I am so strong and wise.”
  - “strengthen the wall” means, “reinforce the wall” or “rebuild the wall.”
  - “I will strengthen you” means, “I will cause you to be strong”
  - “in Yahweh alone are salvation and strength” means, “Yahweh is the only one who saves us and strengthens us.”
  - “the rock of your strength” means, “the faithful one who makes you strong”
  - “with the saving strength of his right hand” means, “he strongly rescues you from trouble like someone who holds you safely with his strong hand.”
  - “of little strength” means, “not very strong” or “weak.”
  - “with all my strength” means, “using my best efforts” or “strongly and completely.”

(See also: [faithful](#), [faithfulness](#), [persevere](#), [perseverance](#), [right hand](#), [salvation](#))

**Bible References:**

Waiting

## **submit, in submission**

### **Definition:**

The term “submit” usually means to voluntarily place oneself under the authority of a person or government.

- The Bible tells believers in Jesus to submit to God and other authorities in their lives.
- The instruction to “submit to one another” means to humbly accept correction and to focus on the needs of others rather than on our own needs.
- To “live in submission to” means to put oneself under the authority of something or someone.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- The term “submit” could also be translated as, “put under the authority of” or “follow the leadership of” or “humbly honor and respect”
- The term “submission” could be translated as, “obedience” or “following the authority of.”
- The phrase “live in submission to” could be translated as, “be in obedience to” or “put oneself under the authority of.”
- The phrase, “be in submission” could be translated as “humbly accept authority.”

(See also: [subject](#), [be subject to](#), [in subjection to](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting



## teacher, Teacher

### Definition:

A teacher is a person who gives other people new information. Teachers help others to obtain and use both knowledge and skills.

- In the Bible, the word “teacher” is used in a special sense to refer to someone who teaches about God. It does not refer to a school teacher.
- People who learn from a teacher are called “students” or “disciples.”
- In some Bible translations, this term is capitalized (“Teacher”) when it is used as a title for Jesus.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The usual word for a teacher can be used to translate this term, unless that word is only used for a school teacher.
- Some cultures may have a special title that is used for religious teachers, such as “Sir” or “Rabbi” or “Preacher.”

(See also: [disciple](#), [preach](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- [27-01] One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, “**Teacher**, what must I do to inherit eternal life?”
- [28-01] One day a rich young ruler came up to Jesus and asked him, “Good **Teacher**, what must I do to have eternal life?”
- [37-02] After the two days had passed, Jesus said to his disciples, “Let’s go back to Judea.” “But **Teacher**,” the disciples answered, “Just a short time ago the people there wanted to kill you!”
- [38-14] Judas came to Jesus and said, “Greetings, **Teacher**,” and kissed him.
- [49-03] Jesus was also a great **teacher**, and he spoke with authority because he is the Son of God.

## test

### Definition:

The term “test” refers to a difficult or painful experience that reveals a person’s strengths and weaknesses.

- God tests people, but he does not tempt them. Satan, however, tempts people to sin.
- God sometimes uses tests to expose people’s sin. A test helps a person to turn away from sin and to draw closer to God.
- Gold and other metals are tested with fire to find out how pure and strong they are. This is a picture of how God uses painful circumstances to test his people.
- To “put to the test” can mean, “challenge something or someone to prove its value.”
- In the context of putting God to the test, it means to keep disobeying him, taking advantage of his mercy.
- Jesus told Satan that it is wrong to put God to the test. He is the almighty, holy God who is above everything and everyone.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “to test” could also be translated as, “to challenge” or “to cause to experience difficulties” or “to prove.”
- Ways to translate “a test” could be, “a challenge” or “a difficult experience.”
- To “put to the test” could be translated as “to test” or “to set up a challenge” or “to force to prove oneself.”
- In the context of testing God, this could be translated as, “trying to force God to prove his love.”
- In some contexts, the term “test” can mean “tempt.”

(See also: [tempt](#), [temptation](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

**thorn, thistle****Facts:**

Thorn bushes and thistles are plants that have prickly branches or flowers. These plants do not produce fruit or anything else that is useful.

- A “thorn” is a hard, sharp growth on the branch or stem of a plant. A “thornbush” is a type of small tree or shrub that has many thorns on its branches.
- A “thistle” is a plant with prickly stems and leaves. Often the flowers are purple.
- Thorn and thistle plants multiply quickly and can cause nearby plants or crops to not be able to grow. This is a picture of how sin keeps a person from producing good spiritual fruit.
- A crown made of twisted thorn branches was placed on Jesus’ head before he was crucified.
- If possible, these terms should be translated by the names of two different plants or bushes that are known in the language area.

(See also: [crown](#), [to crown](#), [fruit](#), [fruitful](#), [spirit](#), [spiritual](#))

**Bible References:**

Waiting

## time

### Facts:

In the Bible the term “time” is often used figuratively to refer to a specific season or period of time when certain events take place. It has a meaning similar to “age” or “epoch” or “season.”

- Both Daniel and Revelation speak of a “time” of great trouble or tribulation that will come upon the earth.
- In the phrase “time, times, and half a time” the term “time” means “year.” This phrase refers to a three and a half year period of time during the great tribulation at the end of this present age.
- Phrases such as “second time” or “many times” refer to the number of occurrences that something happened.
- To be “on time” means to arrive when expected, not late.
- Depending on the context, the term “time” could be translated as, “season” or “time period” or “moment” or “event” or “occurrence.”
- The phrase “times and seasons” is a figurative expression which states the same idea twice. This could also be translated as “certain events happening in certain time periods.” **Doublet**

(See also: [age](#), [tribulation](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

**tremble****Definition:**

The term “tremble” means to shake or quiver out of fear or extreme distress.

- This term is also used figuratively to mean “be very afraid.”
- Sometimes the word “tremble” refers to the ground shaking because of a very loud noise.
- The Bible says that in the presence of the Lord the earth will tremble. This could mean that the people of the earth will shake out of fear of God or that the earth itself will shake.
- This term could be translated as “be afraid” or “fear God” or “shake,” depending on the context.

(See also: [earth](#), [earthly](#), [fear](#), [afraid](#), [fear of Yahweh](#), [Lord](#))

**Bible References:**

Waiting

## **trouble, troubles, troubled**

### **Definition:**

The term “trouble” refers to experiences in life that are very difficult and distressing. To be “troubled” means to feel upset or distressed about something.

- Troubles can be physical, emotional, or spiritual things that hurt a person.
- In the Bible, often troubles are times of testing that God uses to help believers mature and grow in their faith.
- The Old Testament use of “trouble” also referred to judgment that came on people groups who were immoral and rejected God.
- The action, “to trouble” someone means “to bother” that person or to cause him distress.

### **Translation Suggestions**

- The term “trouble” or “troubles” could also be translated as, “danger” or “painful things that happen” or “persecution” or “difficult experiences” or “distress.”
- The term “troubled” could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “undergoing distress” or “feeling terrible distress” or “worried” or “anxious” or “distressed” or “terrified” or “disturbed.”
- “Don’t trouble her” could also be translated as, “don’t bother her” or “don’t criticize her.”
- The phrase “day of trouble” or “times of trouble” could also be translated as, “when you experience distress” or “when difficult things happen to you” or “when God causes distressing things to happen.”
- Ways to translate “make trouble” or “bring trouble” could include, “cause distressing things to happen” or “cause difficulties” or “make them experience very difficult things.”

(See also: [afflict](#), [affliction](#), [persecute](#), [persecution](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## true, truth, come true

### Definition:

The terms “true” and “truth” refer to concepts that are facts, events that actually happened, and statements that were actually said.

- True things are real, genuine, actual, rightful, legitimate, and factual.
- The truth is an understanding, belief, fact, or statement that is true.
- The expression “come true” or “came true” is an expression that means that a prophecy actually happened as it was predicted that it would.
- Truth includes the concept of acting in a way that is reliable and faithful.
- Jesus revealed God’s truth in the words that he spoke.
- God’s word is truth. It tells about things that actually happened and teaches what is true about God and about everything he has made.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context and what is being described, the term “true” could also be translated by “real” or “factual” or “correct” or “right” or “certain” or “genuine.”
- Ways to translate the term “truth” could include, “what is true” or “fact” or “certainty” or “principle.”
- The expression “come true” could also be translated as, “actually happen” or “be fulfilled” or “happen as predicted.”
- The expression “tell the truth” or “speak the truth” could also be translated as, “say what is true” or “tell what really happened” or “say things that are reliable.”
- To “accept the truth” could be translated as, “believe what is true about God.”
- In an expression such as, “worship God in spirit and in truth,” the expression “in truth” could also be translated by, “faithfully obeying what God has taught us.”

(See also: [believe](#), [believe in](#), [belief](#), [faithful](#), [faithfulness](#), [fulfill](#), [obey](#), [obedient](#), [obedience](#), [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#), [understand](#), [understanding](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[02-04]** The snake responded to the woman, “That is not **true**! You will not die.”
- **[14-06]** Immediately Caleb and Joshua, the other two spies, said, “It is **true** that the people of Canaan are tall and strong, but we can certainly defeat them!”
- **[16-01]** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the **true** God.

- [31-08] They worshiped Jesus, saying to him, "**Truly**, you are the Son of God."
- [39-10] "I have come to earth to tell the **truth** about God. Everyone who loves the **truth** listens to me." Pilate said, "What is **truth**?"



## unclean

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “unclean” is used figuratively to refer to things that God declared to be unfit for his people to touch, eat, or sacrifice.

- God gave the Israelites instructions about which animals were “clean” and which ones were “unclean.” The unclean animals were not permitted to be used for eating or for sacrifice.
- People with certain skin diseases were said to be “unclean” until they were healed.
- If the Israelites touched something “unclean,” they themselves would be considered unclean for a certain period of time.
- Obeying God’s commands about not touching or eating unclean things kept the Israelites set apart for God’s service.
- This physical and ritual uncleanness was also symbolic of moral uncleanness.
- In another figurative sense, an “unclean spirit” refers to an evil spirit.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “unclean” could also be translated as “not clean” or “unfit in God’s eyes” or “physically unclean” or “defiled.”
- When referring to a demon as an unclean spirit, “unclean” could be translated as “evil” or “defiled.”
- The translation of this term should allow for spiritual uncleanness. It should be able to refer to anything that God declared as unfit for touching, eating, or sacrifice.

(See also: [clean](#), [cleanse](#), [defile](#), [be defiled](#), [demon](#), [evil spirit](#), [unclean spirit](#), [holy](#), [holiness](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#), [unholy](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## **understand, understanding**

### **Definition:**

The term “understand” means to hear or receive information and know what it means.

- The term “understanding” can refer to “knowledge” or “wisdom” or realizing how to do something.
- To understand someone can also mean to know how that person is feeling.
- While walking on the road to Emmaus, Jesus caused the disciples to understand the meaning of the scriptures about the Messiah.
- Depending on the context, the term “understand” could be translated by “know” or “believe” or “comprehend” or “know what (something) means.”
- Often the term “understanding” can be translated by “knowledge” or “wisdom” or “insight.”

(See also: [believe](#), [believe in](#), [belief](#), [know](#), [knowledge](#), [make known](#), [wise](#), [wisdom](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## **upright, uprightness**

### **Definition:**

The terms “upright” and “uprightness” refer to acting in a way that follows God’s laws.

- The meaning of these words includes the idea of standing up straight and looking directly ahead.
- A person who is “upright” is someone who obeys God’s rules and does not do things that are against his will.
- Terms such as “integrity” and “righteous” have similar meanings and are sometimes used in parallelism constructions, such as “integrity and uprightness.” (See: [Parallelism](#))

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Ways to translate “upright” could include, “acting rightly” or “one who acts rightly” or “following God’s laws” or “obedient to God” or “behaving in a way that is right.”
- The term “uprightness” could be translated as, “moral purity” or “good moral conduct” or “rightness.”
- The phrase “the upright” could be translated as “people who are upright” or “upright people.”

(See also: [integrity](#), [law](#), [principle](#), [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [God’s law](#), [law of Yahweh](#), [obey](#), [obedient](#), [obedience](#), [pure](#), [purify](#), [purification](#), [righteous](#), [righteousness](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## **vineyard**

### **Definition:**

A vineyard is a large garden area where grapevines are grown and grapes are cultivated.

- A vineyard often has a wall around it to protect the fruit from thieves and animals.
- God compared the people of Israel to a vineyard that did not bear good fruit. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- Vineyard could be also translated as, “grapevine garden” or “grape plantation.”

(See also: [grape](#), [Israel](#), [Israelites](#), [nation of Israel](#), [vine](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

**voice****Definition:**

The term “voice” is often used figuratively to refer to speaking or communicating something.

- God is said to use his voice, even though he doesn’t have a voice in the same way a human being does.
- This term can be used to refer to the whole person, as in the statement “A voice is heard in the desert saying, ‘Prepare the way of the Lord.’” This could be translated as, “A person is heard calling out in the desert...” (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- To “hear someone’s voice” could also be translated as “hear someone speaking.”
- Sometimes the word “voice” may be used for objects that cannot literally speak, such as when David exclaims in the psalms that the “voice” of the heavens proclaims God’s mighty works. This could also be translated as “their splendor shows clearly how great God is.”

(See also: [call](#), [calling](#), [called](#), [call out](#), [proclaim](#), [proclamation](#), [splendor](#))

**Bible References:**

Waiting

**VOW****Definition:**

A vow is a promise that a person makes to God. The person promises to do a certain thing in order to specially honor God or to show devotion to him.

- After a person makes a vow, he is obligated to fulfill that vow.
- The Bible teaches that a person may be judged by God if he doesn't keep his vow.
- Sometimes a person may ask God to protect him or provide for him in exchange for making the vow.
- But God is not required to fulfill a request that a person asks for in his vow.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, "vow" could be translated as "solemn promise" or "promise made to God."
- This word should be translated differently than "oath."

(See also: [promise](#), [oath](#), [swear](#), [swear by](#))

**Bible References:**

Waiting

## walk

### Definition:

The term “walk” is often used in a figurative sense to mean “live.”

- “Enoch walked with God” means that Enoch lived in a close relationship with God.
- To “walk by the Spirit” means to be guided by the Holy Spirit so that we do things that please and honor God.
- To “walk in” God’s commands or God’s ways means to “live in obedience to” his commands, that is, to “obey his commands” or “do his will.”
- When God says he will “walk among” his people, it means that he is living among them or closely interacting with them.
- To “walk contrary to” means to live or behave in a way that is against something or someone.
- To “walk after” means to seek or pursue someone or something. It can also mean to act in the same way as someone else.

### Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate “walk” literally, as long as the correct meaning will be understood.
- Otherwise, figurative uses of “walk” could also be translated by “live” or “act” or “behave.”
- The phrase “walk by the Spirit” could be translated by, “live in obedience to the Holy Spirit” or “behave in a way that is pleasing to the Holy Spirit” or “do things that are pleasing to God as the Holy Spirit guides you.”
- To “walk in God’s commands” could be translated by “live by God’s commands” or “obey God’s commands.”
- The phrase “walked with God” could be translated as, “lived in close relationship with God by obeying and honoring him.”

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [honor](#), [to honor](#), [\[:en:obe:other:obey\]](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

**watch, watchman****Definition:**

The term “watch” means to look at something very closely and carefully. It also has several figurative meanings. A “watchman” was someone whose job was to guard a city by looking carefully all around him for any danger or threat to the people in the city.

- The command to “watch your life and doctrine closely” means to be careful to live wisely and to not believe false teachings.
- To “watch out” is a warning to be careful to avoid a danger or harmful influence.
- To “watch” or “keep watch” means to always be alert and on guard against sin and evil. It can also mean to “be ready.”
- To “keep watch over” or “keep close watch” can mean to guard, protect or take care of someone or something.
- Other ways of translating “watch” could include, “pay close attention to” or “be diligent” or “be very careful” or “be on guard.”
- Other words for “watchman” are “sentry” or “guard.”

**Bible References:**

Waiting



## water, waters

### Definition:

In addition to its primary meaning, “water” also often refers to a body of water, such as an ocean, sea, lake, or river.

- The term “waters” refers to bodies of water or many sources of water. It can also be a general reference for a large amount of water.
- A figurative use of “waters” refers to great distress, difficulties, and suffering. For example, God promises that when we “go through the waters” he will be with us.
- The phrase “many waters” emphasizes how great the difficulties are.
- To “water” livestock and other animals means to “provide water for” them. In Bible times, this usually involved drawing water from a well with a bucket and pouring the water into a trough or other container for the animals to drink from.
- In the Old Testament, God is referred to as the spring or fountain of “living waters” for his people. This means he is the source of spiritual power and refreshment.
- In the New Testament, Jesus used the phrase “living water” to refer to the Holy Spirit working in a person to transform and bring new life.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The phrase, “draw water” could be translated as, “pull water up from a well with a bucket.”
- “Streams of living water will flow from them” could be translated as, “the power and blessings from the Holy Spirit will flow out of them them like streams of water.” Instead of “blessings” the term “gifts” or “fruits” or “godly character” could be used.
- When Jesus is talking to the Samaritan woman at the well, the phrase “living water” could be translated as “water that gives life” or “lifegiving water.” In this context, the imagery of water must be kept in the translation.
- Depending on the context, the term “waters” or “many waters” could be translated as “great suffering (that surrounds you like water)” or “overwhelming difficulties (like a flood of water)” or “large amounts of water.”

(See also: [life](#), [live](#), [living](#), [alive](#), [spirit](#), [spiritual](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [power](#), [powers](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## well, cistern

### Definition:

The terms “well” and “cistern” refer to two different kinds of sources for water in Bible times.

- A well is a deep hole dug into the ground so that underground water can flow into it.
- A cistern is a deep hole dug into rock that was used as a holding tank for collecting rain water.
- Cisterns were usually dug into rock and sealed with plaster to keep the water in. A “broken cistern” happened when the plaster became cracked so that the water leaked out.
- Cisterns were often located in the courtyard area of people’s homes to catch the rainwater that would run off the roof.
- Wells were often located where they could be accessed by several families or a whole community.
- Because water was very important for both people and livestock, the right to use a well was often a cause of strife and conflict.
- Both wells and cisterns were usually covered with a large stone to prevent anything falling in it. Often there was a rope with a bucket or pot attached to it to bring the water up to the surface.
- Sometimes a dry cistern was used as a place to imprison someone, such as happened to Joseph and Jeremiah.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “well” could include, “deep water hole” or “deep hole for spring water” or “deep hole for drawing water.”
- The term “cistern” could be translated as “stone water pit” or “deep and narrow pit for water” or “underground tank for holding water.”
- These terms are similar in meaning. The main difference is that a well continually receives water from underground springs, whereas a cistern is a holding tank for water that usually comes from rain.

(See also: [courtyard](#), [court](#), [Jeremiah](#), [Joseph \(OT\)](#), [prison](#), [prisoner](#), [imprison](#), [strife](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## wine, wineskin, new wine

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “wine” refers to a kind of fermented drink made from the juice of a fruit called grapes. Wine was stored in “wineskins,” which were containers made out of animal skin.

- The term “new wine” referred to grape juice that had just been taken from the grape and was not fermented yet. Sometimes the term “wine” also refer to unfermented grape juice.
- To make wine, grapes are crushed in a winepress so that the juice comes out. The juice eventually ferments and alcohol forms in it.
- In Bible times, wine was the normal drink with meals. It did not have as much alcohol as present-day wine has.
- Before wine was served for a meal, it was often mixed with water.
- A wineskin that was old and brittle would get cracks in it, which allowed the wine to leak out. New wineskins were soft and flexible, which meant they did not tear easily and could store the wine safely.
- If wine is unknown in your culture, it could be translated as, “fermented grape juice” or “fermented drink made from a fruit called grapes” or “fermented fruit juice.” (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))
- Ways to translate “wineskin” could include, “bag for wine” or “animal skin wine bag” or “animal skin container for wine.”

(See also: [grape](#), [vine](#), [vineyard](#), [winepress](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

smashed

## wise, wisdom

### Definition:

The term “wise” describes someone who understands what is the right and moral thing to do and then does that. “Wisdom” is the understanding and practice of what is true and morally right.

- Being wise includes the ability to make good decisions, especially choosing to do what pleases God.
- In the Bible, the term “worldly wisdom” is a figurative way of referring to what people in this world think is wise, but which is actually foolish.
- People become wise by listening to God and humbly obeying his will.
- A wise person will show the fruits of the Holy Spirit in his life, such as joy, kindness, love and patience.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate “wise” could include, “obedient to God” or “sensible and obedient” or “God-fearing.”
- “Wisdom” could be translated by a word or phrase that means, “wise living” or “sensible and obedient living” or “good judgment.”
- It is best to translate “wise” and “wisdom” in such a way that they are different terms from other key terms like righteous or obedient.

(See: [obey](#), [obedient](#), [obedience](#), [fruit](#), [fruitful](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- [02-05] She also wanted to be **wise**, so she picked some of the fruit and ate it.
- [18-01] When Solomon asked for **wisdom**, God was pleased and made him the **wisest** man in the world.
- [23-09] Some time later, **wise** men from countries far to the east saw an unusual star in the sky.
- [45-01] He (Stephen) had a good reputation and was full of the Holy Spirit and of **wisdom**.

**womb****Definition:**

The term “womb” refers to where a baby grows inside its mother.

- This is an older term that is sometimes used in order to be polite and less direct. (See: [Euphemism](#))
- A more modern term for womb is “uterus.”
- Some languages use a word like “belly” to refer to a woman’s womb or uterus.
- Use a word for this in the project language that is well-known, natural, and acceptable.

**Bible References:**

Waiting

**word****Definition:**

A “word” refers to something that someone has said.

- An example of this would be when the angel told Zechariah, “You did not believe my words,” which means, “You did not believe what I said.”
- This term almost always refers to an entire message, not just one word.
- Often in the Bible “the word” refers to everything God has said or commanded, as in “the word of God” or “the word of truth.”
- Sometimes “word” refers to speech in general, such as “powerful in word and deed” which means “powerful in speech and behavior.”
- A very special use of this term is when Jesus is called “the Word.”

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Different ways of translating “word” or “words” include, “teaching” or “message” or “news” or “a saying” or “what was said.”
- When it refers to Jesus as “the Word,” this term could be translated as “the Message” or “the Saying.”

(See also: [word of God](#), [God’s word](#), [scripture](#))

**Bible References:**

Waiting

## works, deeds, work, acts

### Definition:

In the Bible, the terms “works,” “deeds,” and “acts” are used to refer generally to things that God or people do.

- The term “work” refers to doing labor or anything that is done to serve other people.
- God’s “works” and the “work of his hands” are expressions that refer to all the things he does or has done, including creating the world, saving sinners, providing for the needs of all creation and keeping the entire universe in place. The terms “deeds” and “acts” are also used to refer to God’s miracles in expressions such as, “mighty acts” or “marvelous deeds.”
- The works or deeds that a person does can be either good or evil.
- The Holy Spirit empowers believers to do good works, which are also called “good fruit.”
- People are not saved by their good works; they are saved through faith in Jesus.
- A person’s “work” can be what he does to earn a living or to serve God. The Bible also refers to God as “working.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “works” or “deeds” could be, “actions” or “things that are done.”
- When referring to God’s “works” or “deeds” and the “work of his hands,” these expressions could also be translated as, “miracles” or “mighty acts” or “amazing things he does.”
- The expression, “the work of God” could be translated as, “the things that God is doing” or “the miracles God does” or “the amazing things that God does” or “everything God has accomplished.”
- The term “work” can just be the singular of “works” as in, “every good work” or “every good deed.”
- The term “work” can also have the broader meaning of “service” or “ministry.” For example, the expression, “your work in the Lord” could also be translated as, “what you do for the Lord.”
- The expression, “examine your own work” could also be translated as, “make sure what you are doing is God’s will” or “make sure that what you are doing pleases God.”
- The expression “the work of the Holy Spirit” could be translated as, “the empowering of the Holy Spirit” or “the ministry of the Holy Spirit” or “the things that the Holy Spirit does.”

(See: [fruit](#), [fruitful](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [miracle](#), [wonder](#), [sign](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## translationAcademy

### Abstract Nouns

*This answers the question: What are abstract nouns and how do I deal with them in my translation?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Parts of Speech*
- *Sentences*

Abstract nouns are nouns that refer to attitudes, qualities, events, situations, or even to relationships among these ideas. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as happiness, weight, injury, unity, friendship, health, and reason. This is a translation issue because some languages may express a certain idea with an abstract noun, while others would need a different way to express it. For example, "What is its *weight*?" could be expressed as "How much does it *weigh*?" or "How *heavy* is it?"

#### Description

Remember that nouns are words that refer to a person, place, thing, or idea. **ABSTRACT NOUNS** are nouns that refer to attitudes, qualities, events, situations, or even to relationships among these ideas. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as joy, peace, creation, goodness, contentment, justice, truth, freedom, vengeance, slowness, length, and weight.

Abstract nouns allow us to express thoughts about ideas in fewer words than if we did not have those nouns. For example, we can say, "I believe in the forgiveness of sin." But if English did not have the two abstract nouns "forgiveness" and "sin," then we would have to make a longer sentence to express the same meaning. We would have to say, for example, "I believe that God is willing to forgive people after they have sinned."

Abstract nouns also allow us to refer to a situation without telling more details about it than we want to tell. For example, we can say "I got here late because there was an accident on the highway." "Accident" is an abstract noun. If it does not matter whose accident it was, or what kind of accident it was, then it can be better if I do not have to say these things about it.

**Reason this is a translation issue:** The Bible that you translate from may use abstract nouns to express certain ideas. Your language might not use abstract nouns for some of those ideas; instead, it might use phrases to express those ideas. Those phrases will have other kinds of words such as adjectives, verbs, or adverbs, that express some of the meaning in the abstract noun.

#### Examples from the Bible

from *childhood* you have known the sacred writings (2 Timothy 3:15 ULB)

The abstract noun "childhood" refers to when someone is a child.



But *godliness with contentment* is great *gain*. (1 Timothy 6:6 ULB)

The abstract nouns “godliness” and “contentment” refer to being godly and content. The abstract noun “gain” refers to something that benefits or helps someone.

Today *salvation* has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham. (Luke 19:9 ULB)

The abstract noun “salvation” here refers to being saved.

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider *slowness* to be (2 Peter 3:9 ULB)

The abstract noun “slowness” refers how slowly something is done.

He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the *purposes* of the heart. (1 Corinthians 4:5 ULB)

The abstract noun “purposes” refers to the things that people want to do and the reasons they want to do them.

### Translation Strategies

If an abstract noun would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun.

- **from *childhood* you have known the sacred writings** (2 Timothy 3:15 ULB)
  - “Ever since *you were a child* you have known the sacred writings.”
- **But *godliness with contentment* is great *gain*.** (1 Timothy 6:6 ULB)
  - “But *being godly* and *content* is very *beneficial*.”
  - “But we *benefit* greatly when we *are godly* and *content*.”
  - “But we *benefit* greatly when we *honor and obey God* and when we are *happy with what we have*.”
- **Today *salvation* has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham.** (Luke 19:9 ULB)
  - “Today the people in this house *have been saved*...”
  - “Today God *has saved* the people in this house...”

- **The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider *slowness* to be** (2 Peter 3:9 ULB)
  - "The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider *moving slowly* to be"
  
- **He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the *purposes* of the heart.** (1 Corinthians 4:5 ULB)
  - "He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal *the things that people want to do and the reasons they want to do them.*"

## Active or Passive

*This answers the question: What do active and passive mean, and how do I translate passive sentences?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Sentence Structure*
- *Verbs*

Some languages have both active and passive sentences. In active sentences, the subject does the action. In passive sentences the subject is the one that the action is done to. Here are some examples with their subjects underlined:

- ACTIVE: *My father* built the house in 2010.
- PASSIVE: *The house* was built in 2010.

Translators whose languages do not have passive sentences will need to know how they can translate passive sentences that they find in the Bible. Other translators will need to decide when to use a passive sentence and when not to.

### Description

Some languages have both active and passive forms of sentences.

- In the **ACTIVE** form, the subject does the action and is always mentioned.
- In the **PASSIVE** form, the action is done to the subject and the one who does the action is *not always* mentioned.

In the examples of active and passive sentences below, we have underlined the subject.

**ACTIVE:** *My father* built the house in 2010.

**PASSIVE:** *The house* was built by my father in 2010.

**PASSIVE:** *The house* was built in 2010. (This does not tell who did the action.)

All languages have active forms. Some languages have passive forms, and some do not. The passive form is not used for the same reasons in all of the languages that have it.

### Purposes for the passive:

- The speaker is talking about the person or thing the action was done to, not about the person who did the action.
- The speaker does not want to tell who did the action.
- The speaker does not know who did the action.

## Translation Principles Regarding the Passive

- Translators whose language does not use passive forms will need to find another way to express the idea.
- Translators whose language has passive forms will need to understand why the passive is used in a particular sentence in the Bible and decide whether or not to use a passive form for that purpose in his translation of the sentence.

## Examples from the Bible

And their shooters shot at your soldiers from off the wall, and some of the king's servants *were killed*, and your servant Uriah the Hittite *was killed* too. (2 Samuel 11:24 ULB)

This means that the enemies shooters shot and killed some of the king's servants, including Uriah. The point is what happened to the king's servants and Uriah, not who shot them.

In the morning when the men of the town got up, the altar of Baal *was broken down* ... (Judges 6:28 ULB)

The men of the town saw what had happened to the altar of Baal, but they did not know who broke it down.

No stonework *was seen* there. (1 Kings 6:18 ULB)

This means that no one saw stonework there. The point is that no stonework was done there.

## Translation Strategies

If you decide that it is better to translate without a passive form, here are some strategies you might consider.

1. Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who or what did the action.
2. Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who or what did the action.
3. Use a different verb.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who did the action.

- **A loaf of bread *was given* him every day from the street of the bakers.** (Jeremiah 37:21 ULB)
  - *The king's servants gave* Jeremiah a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

2. Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who did the action. Instead use a generic expression like "they," or "people," or "someone."

- **It would be better for him if a millstone *were put* around his neck and he *were thrown* into the sea** (Luke 17:2 ULB)
  - It would be better for him if *they were to put* a millstone around his neck and *throw* him into the sea.
  - It would be better for him if *someone were to put* a heavy stone around his neck and *throw* him into the sea.

3. Use a different verb in an active sentence.

- **A loaf of bread *was given* him every day from the street of the bakers.** (Jeremiah 37:21 ULB)
  - He *received* a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

*Next we recommend you learn about:*

- *Abstract Nouns*
- *Word Order*

## Apostrophe

*This answers the question: What is the figure of speech called apostrophe?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Figures of Speech*

Apostrophe is a figure of speech in which a speaker turns his attention away from his listeners and speaks to someone or something that he knows cannot hear him. This calls his listener's attention to his feelings toward that person or thing.

Mountains of Gilboa, Let there not be dew or rain on you (2 Samuel 1:21 ULB)

King Saul was killed on Mount Gilboa, and David sang a sad song about it. By telling the mountains that he wanted them to have no dew or rain, he showed how sad he was.

### Description

Apostrophe is a figure of speech in which a speaker turns his attention away from his listeners and speaks to someone or something that he knows cannot hear him. This calls his listener's attention to his feelings toward that person or thing.

**Reason this is a translation issue:** Many languages do not use apostrophe, and readers could be confused by it. They may wonder who the speaker is talking to.

### Examples from the Bible

Come now, you who are rich, cry out loud because of the miseries coming upon you.  
(James 5:1 ULB)

James wrote to the church, which was made up of poor people, as if rich people could hear him, showing his anger about what rich people were doing.

The man of God cried against the altar by the word of Yahweh and said, "Altar, altar, Yahweh says, '... on you they will burn men's bones.'" (1 Kings 13:2 ULB)

The man of God spoke as if the altar could hear him, but he really wanted the king, who was standing there, to hear him.

### Translation Strategies

If apostrophe would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option.

1. Have the speaker express his feelings toward the thing or idea without speaking directly to it.

**Examples of Translation Strategies Applied**

1. If this way of speaking would be confusing to your people, you may preserve the meaning of the apostrophe and let the speaker continue speaking to the people that are listening to him.

- **The man of God cried against the altar by the word of Yahweh and said, "Altar, altar, Yahweh says, ' ... on you they will burn men's bones.' " (1 Kings 13:2 ULB)**
  - "The man of God said, "This is what Yahweh says *about this altar*' ... They will burn men's bones on *it*."

## Doublet

*This answers the question: What are doublets and how can I translate them?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Figures of Speech*

A doublet is a pair of words used together that mean nearly the same nearly thing. In some languages people do not use doublets, or they may use them only in certain situations. Translators may need to find some other way to express the meaning.

King David was *old* and *advanced in years*. (1 Kings 1:1 ULB)

The underlined words mean the same thing. Together they mean “very old.”

### Description

We are using the word doublet to refer to two words or very short phrases that mean the same thing and that are used in the same phrase. Often they are joined with the word “and.” Often they are used to emphasize or intensify the idea expressed by the two words.

### Reason this is a translation issue

In some languages people do not use doublets. Or they may use doublets, but they may do it for a reason that would not fit in a particular verse.

### Examples from the Bible

King David was *old* and *advanced in years*. (1 Kings 1:1 ULB)

This means that he was “very old.”

he attacked two men *more righteous* and *better* than himself (1 Kings 2:32 ULB)

This means that they were “much more righteous” than he was.

You have decided to prepare *false* and *deceptive* words (Daniel 2:9 ULB)

This means that they had prepared “many false things to say.”

as of a lamb *without blemish* and *without spot*. (1 Peter 1:19 ULB)

This means that he was like a lamb that did not have any blemish—not even one.



### Translation Strategies

If a doublet would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using one. If not, consider these strategies.

1. Translate only one of the words.
2. If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words and add a word that intensifies it such as “very” or “great” or “many.”
3. If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use your culture’s way of doing that.

### Translation Strategies Applied

1. Translate only one of the words.

- **You have decided to prepare *false* and *deceptive* words** (Daniel 2:9 ULB)

- ”You have decided to prepare *false* things to say.”

2. If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words and add a word that intensifies it such as “very” or “great” or “many.”

- **King David was *old* and *advanced in years***. (1 Kings 1:1 ULB)

- ”King David was *very old*.”

3. If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language’s ways of doing that.

- **a lamb *without blemish* and *without spot***. (1 Peter 1:19 ULB) - English can emphasize this with “any” and “at all.”

- ”a lamb *without any blemish at all*”

## Ellipsis

*This answers the question: What is ellipsis?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Figures of Speech*
- *Sentences*

Ellipsis is where a speaker or writer leaves one or more words out of a sentence because he knows that the hearer or reader will understand the meaning of the sentence and fill in the words in his mind when he hears or reads the words that are there.

### Description

Ellipsis is where one or more words are left out of the sentence because the sentence can be understood without them. The information that is omitted has usually already been stated in a preceding sentence or phrase.

the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous  
(Psalm 1:5)

This is ellipsis because “sinners in the assembly of the righteous” is not a complete sentence. The speaker assumes that the hearer will understand what it is that sinners will not do in the assembly of the righteous.

**Reason this is a translation issue:** Readers who see incomplete sentences or phrases may not know what the missing information is.

### Examples from the Bible

when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?”  
He said, “Lord, *that I might receive my sight.*” (Luke 18:40-41 ULB)

The man answered in an incomplete sentence because he wanted to be polite by giving Jesus only as much information as necessary. He did not say that he wanted Jesus to heal him, because he knew that Jesus would understand that if he wanted to receive his sight, Jesus would have to heal him.

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf *and Sirion like a young ox.* (Psalm 29:6 ULB)

The writer wants his words to be few and to make good poetry. He did not say that Yahweh makes Sirion skip like a young ox because he knew that his readers could fill in the information themselves.

## Translation Strategies

If ellipsis would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

- **the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor *sinner*s in the assembly of the righteous** (Psalm 1:5)
  - "the wicked will not stand in the judgment, and *sinner*s will not stand in the assembly of the righteous"
- **when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, "What do you want me to do for you?" He said, "Lord, *that I might receive my sight.*"** (Luke 18:40-41)
  - "when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, 'What do you want me to do for you?' He said, 'Lord, I want you to heal me that I might receive my sight.'"
- **He makes Lebanon skip like a calf and Sirion like a young ox.** (Psalm 29:6)
  - "He makes Lebanon skip like a calf, and he makes Sirion skip like a young ox."

## Euphemism

*This answers the question: What is a Euphemism?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Figures of Speech*

A euphemism is a mild or polite way of referring to something that is unpleasant, embarrassing, or socially unacceptable, such as death or activities usually done in private. Its purpose is to avoid offending the people who hear or read it.

### Description

A euphemism is a mild or polite way of referring to something that is unpleasant, embarrassing, or socially unacceptable. Its purpose is to avoid offending the people who hear or read it.

they found Saul and his sons fallen on Mount Gilboa. (1 Chronicles 10:8 ULB)

This means that Saul and his sons were dead. It is euphemism because the important thing was not that Saul and his sons had fallen but that they were dead. Sometimes people do not like to speak directly about death because it is unpleasant.

**Reason this is a translation issue:** Readers may think that the writer means only what the words literally say.

### Examples from the Bible

where there was a cave. Saul went inside to relieve himself (1 Samuel 24:3 ULB)

The original hearers would have understood that Saul went into the cave to use it as a toilet, but the writer wanted to avoid offending or distracting them, so he does not say specifically what Saul did or what he left in the cave.

whether we are awake or asleep (1 Thessalonians 5:10 ULB)

Paul refers to being dead as being “asleep” so that instead of thinking that they will never see their loved ones again in this life, his readers will remember that they will see them again when Jesus establishes his kingdom.

### Translation Strategies

If euphemism would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

1. Use a euphemism from your own culture.
2. State the information plainly without a euphemism if it would not be offensive.

**Examples of Translation Strategies Applied**

1. Use a euphemism from your own culture.

- **where there was a cave. Saul went inside to relieve himself** (1 Samuel 24:3 ULB) - Some languages might use euphemisms like these:
  - “where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave to use it as a toilet”
  - “where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave to dig a hole”
  - “where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave to have some time alone”

2. State the information plainly without a euphemism if it would not be offensive.

- **whether we are awake or asleep** (1 Thessalonians 5:10 ULB)
  - “whether we are alive or dead”

## Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

*This answers the question: What are assumed knowledge, implicit information, and explicit information?*

**Assumed knowledge** is whatever a speaker assumes his audience knows before he speaks and gives them some kind of information. There are two types information.

- **Explicit information** is what the speaker states directly.
- **Implicit information** is what the speaker does not state directly because he expects his audience to be able to learn it from what he says.

### Description

When someone speaks or writes, he has something specific that he wants people to know. He normally states this directly. This is **explicit information**.

The speaker assumes that his audience already knows certain things that they will think about in order to understand this information. Normally he does not tell people these things, although what he says may remind them. This is called **assumed knowledge**.

The speaker does not always directly state everything that he expects his audience to learn from what he says. Information that he expects people to learn from what he says even though he does not state it directly is **implicit information**.

### Examples from the Bible

Then a scribe came to him and said, "Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go." Jesus said to him, "Foxes *have holes*, and the birds of the sky *have nests*, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:20 ULB)

Jesus did not say what foxes and birds use holes and nests for, because he assumed that the scribe would have known that foxes sleep in holes in the ground and birds sleep in their nests. This is **assumed knowledge**. Jesus did not directly say here "I am the Son of Man" but, if the scribe did not already know it, then that fact would be **implicit information** that he could learn because Jesus referred to himself that way. Jesus did not state explicitly that he travelled a lot and did not have a house that he slept in every night. That is **implicit information** that the scribe could learn when Jesus said that he had nowhere to lay his head.

Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! If the mighty deeds had been done in Tyre and Sidon which were done in you, they would have repented long ago in sackcloth and ashes. But it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you. (Matthew 11:21, 22 ULB)

Jesus assumed that the people he was speaking to knew that Tyre and Sidon were very wicked, and that the day of judgment is a time when God will judge every person. Jesus also knew that the

people he was talking to believed that they were good and did not need to repent. Jesus did not need to tell them these things. This is all **assumed knowledge**.

An important piece of **implicit information** here is that because the people he was speaking to did not repent, they would be judged more severely than the people of Tyre and Sidon would be judged.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For *they do not wash their hands when they eat*. (Matthew 15:2 ULB)

One of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating. People thought that in order to be righteous, they had to follow all the traditions of the elders. This was **assumed knowledge** that the Pharisees who were speaking to Jesus expected him to know. They were accusing his disciples of not following the traditions. This is **implicit information** that they wanted him to understand from what they said.

*Next we recommend you learn about:*

- *Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit*

## Hyperbole

*This answers the question: What is hyperbole?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Figures of Speech*

Hyperbole is a figure of speech in which the speaker shows that something is very important by describing it as larger or greater than it really is. He may greatly exaggerate something in order to show his strong feeling or opinion about it, or he may generalize the situation by using words like “every” or “all” to mean “many.”

### Description

Hyperbole is a figure of speech in which the speaker shows that something is very important by describing it as larger or greater than it really is. There are two kinds of hyperbole:

1. Exaggeration: This is when a speaker deliberately describes something by an extreme or even unreal statement, usually to show his strong feeling or opinion about it.

Whoever does not *carry his own cross* and come after me cannot be my disciple. (Luke 14:27 ULB) - This is an exaggeration. It means that whoever wants to be Jesus’ disciple must be determined to follow him faithfully, even if his enemies were to kill that person.

2. Generalization: This is when a speaker uses words like “every” or “all” to mean something like “very many,” but not “every one.” (Some people may not call generalization like this “hyperbole.”)

Moses was educated in *all the learning of the Egyptians* (Acts 7:22 ULB) - This is a generalization. It means that he had learned much of what the Egyptians knew and taught.

### Reason this is a translation issue

If readers do not understand that a statement is a hyperbole, they may either think that something happened that did not happen, or they may think that the speaker or writer was saying something that is not true.

### Examples from the Bible

#### Examples of Exaggeration

If your hand causes you to stumble, *cut it off*. It is better for you to enter into life maimed... (Mark 9:43 ULB)



When Jesus said to cut off your hand, he meant that we should do whatever extreme things we need to do in order not to sin. He used this hyperbole to show how extremely important it is to try to stop sinning.

If anyone comes to me and does not *hate* his own father, mother, wife, children, brothers and sisters—yes, and his own life also—he cannot be my disciple. (Luke 14:26 ULB)

Because of many other things that Jesus said, we know that his use of the word “hate” here is hyperbole. He meant that we must not love even our own family members more than we love him. We must love him more than we love ourselves or anyone else.

The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and troops *as numerous as the sand on the seashore*. (1 Samuel 13:5 ULB)

The underlined phrase is an exaggeration. It means that there were many, many soldiers in the Philistine army.

### Examples of Generalization

They found him, and they said to him, “*Everyone* is looking for you.” (Mark 1:37 ULB)

The disciples told Jesus that everyone was looking looking for him. They probably did not mean that everyone in the city was looking for him, but that many people were looking for him, or that all of Jesus closest friends there were looking for him.

But as his anointing teaches you about *all things* and is true and is not a lie, and even as it has taught you, remain in him. (1 John 2:27 ULB)

This is a generalization. God’s Spirit teaches us about all things that we need to know.

### Caution

Do not assume that something is hyperbole just because it seems to be impossible. God does miraculous things.

... they saw Jesus *walking on the sea* and coming near the boat ... (John 6:19 ULB)

This is not hyperbole. Jesus really walked on the water. It is a literal statement.

... for *all* have sinned and come short of the glory of God. (Romans 3:23 ULB)

The word “all” here is not hyperbole. All humans have sinned. The only human who has never sinned is Jesus Christ, the Son of God.

## Translation Strategies

If the hyperbole would be natural and people would understand it and not think that it is a lie, consider using it. If not, here is another option.

1. Express the meaning without the hyperbole. For example “all the people” could be translated as “large crowds of people.”

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Express the meaning without the hyperbole.

- **If anyone comes to me and does not *hate* his own father, mother, wife, children, brothers and sisters—yes, and his own life also—he cannot be my disciple.** (Luke 14:26 ULB)
  - “If anyone comes to me and does not *love me much more than* he loves his own father, mother, wife, children, brothers and sisters—yes, and his own life also—he cannot be my disciple.”
- **The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and troops *as numerous as the sand on the seashore*.** (1 Samuel 13:5 ULB)
  - “The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and *a great number of troops*.”

## Hypothetical Situations

*This answers the question: What is a hypothetical situation?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Writing Styles*

“If the sun stopped shining...” “What if the sun stopped shining...” “Suppose the sun stopped shining...” “If only the sun had not stopped shining.” We use such expressions to set up hypothetical situations, imagining what might have happened or what could happen in the future but probably will not. We also use them to express regret or wishes. These occur often in the Bible. We need to translate them in a way that people will know that the event did not actually happen, and that they’ll understand why the event was imagined.

### Description

Hypothetical situations are situations that are not real. They can be in the past, present, or future. Hypothetical situations in the past and present have not happened, and ones in the future are not expected to happen.

People sometimes tell about conditions and what would happen if those conditions were met, but they know that these things have not happened or probably will not happen. (The conditions are the phrase that start with “if.”)

- If he had known about the party, he would have come to it. (But he did not come.)
- If he knew about the party, he would be here. (But he is not here.)
- If he knew about the party, he would come to it. (But he probably will not come.)

People sometimes express wishes about things that have not happened or that are not expected to happen.

- I wish he had come.
- I wish he were here.
- I wish he would come.

People sometimes express regrets about things that have not happened or that are not expected to happen.

- If only he had come.
- If only he were here.
- If only he would come.

### Reason this is a translation issue

- Translators need recognize the different kinds of hypothetical situations in the Bible.
- Translators need to know their own language’s ways of talking about different kinds of hypothetical situations.

## Examples from the Bible

### 1. Hypothetical situation in the past

“Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! If the mighty deeds had been done in Tyre and Sidon which were done in you, they would have repented long ago in sackcloth and ashes.” (Matthew 11:21 ULB)

Here in Matthew 11:21 Jesus said that if the people living in the ancient cities of Tyre and Sidon had been able to see the miracles that he performed, they would have repented long ago. He said this to rebuke the people of Chorazin and Bethsaida who had seen his miracles yet did not repent. The people of Tyre and Sidon did not actually see his miracles and repent.

### 2. Hypothetical situations in the present

Also, no man puts new wine into old wineskins. If he did that, the new wine would burst the skins, and the wine would be spilled, and the wineskins would be destroyed. (Luke 5:37 ULB)

Jesus told about what would happen if a person were to put new wine into old wineskins. But no one would do that. He used this imaginary situation as an example to show that people do not mix new things with old things. He did this so that people could understand why his disciples were not fasting as people traditionally did.

Jesus said to them, “What man would there be among you, who, *if* he had just one sheep, and if this sheep fell into a deep hole on the Sabbath, would not grasp hold of it and lift it out? (Matthew 12:11 ULB)

Jesus asked the religious leaders what they would do on the Sabbath if one of their sheep fell into a hole. He was not saying that their sheep would fall into a hole. He used this imaginary situation to show them that they were wrong to judge him for healing people on the Sabbath.

### 3. Hypothetical situation in the future

*Unless those days are shortened, no flesh would be saved; but for the sake of the elect, those days will be shortened.* (Matthew 24:22 ULB)

Jesus was talking about a future time when very bad things would happen. He told what would happen if those days of trouble were to last a long time. He did this to show about bad those days will be - so bad that if they lasted a long time, no one would be saved. But then he clarified that God will shorten those days of trouble, so that the elect (those he has chosen) will be saved.

### 4. Expressing emotion about a hypothetical situation

Regrets and wishes are very similar.

The Israelites said to them, “*If only we had died by Yahweh’s hand in the land of Egypt when we were sitting by the pots of meat and were eating bread to the full.* For you have brought us out into this wilderness to kill our whole community with hunger.” (Exodus 16:3 ULB)

Here the Israelites were afraid they would have to suffer and die of hunger in the wilderness, and so they wished that they had stayed in Egypt and died there with full stomachs. They were complaining.

I know what you have done, and that you are neither cold nor hot. *I wish that you were either cold or hot!* (Revelation 3:15 ULB)

Jesus' wished that the people were either hot or cold. He was rebuking them.

### Translation Strategies

Know how people speaking your language show

- that something could have happened, but did not.
- that something could be true now, but is not.
- that something could happen in the future, but will not unless something changes.
- that they wish for something, but it does not happen.
- that they regret that something did not happen.

Use your language's ways of showing these kinds of things.

Also watch the video for computer (see <http://youtu.be/GfFX1wWjJhA> ) or tablet/phone (see <http://youtu.be/jIbY2ikNtHU> ).

## Idiom

*This answers the question: What are idioms and how can I translate them?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Figures of Speech*

An idiom is a certain kind of figure of speech, the kind that usually cannot be correctly understood without being told its true meaning. Every language has them. Some English examples are:

- You are pulling my leg (This means, “You are telling me a lie”)
- Do not push the envelope (This means, “Do not take a matter to its extreme”)
- This house is under water (This means, “The debt owed for this house is greater than its actual value”)
- We are painting the town red (This means, “We are going around town tonight celebrating very intensely”)

## Description

An idiom is a phrase that has a special meaning to the people of the language or culture that uses it. Its meaning may be different from what a person would understand from the meanings of the individual words that form the phrase.

he resolutely *set his face* to go to Jerusalem. (Luke 9:51 ULB)

The words “set his face” is an idiom that means “decided.”

Sometimes people may be able to understand an idiom from another culture, but it might sound like a strange way to express the meaning.

I am not worthy that you should *enter under my roof*. (Luke 7:6 ULB)

The words “enter under my roof” is an idiom that means “enter my house.”

Let these words go deeply into your ears (Luke 9:44 ULB)

This idiom means “Listen carefully and remember what I say.”

**Purpose:** An idiom is created in a culture probably somewhat by accident when someone describes something in an unusual way. But, when that unusual way communicates the message powerfully and people understand it clearly, other people start to use it.

## Reasons this is a translation issue

- People can easily misunderstand idioms in the original languages of the Bible if they do not know the cultures that originally wrote the Bible.
- People can easily misunderstand idioms that are in the source language Bibles if they do not know the cultures that made those translations.

### Examples from the Bible

“Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, ”Look, we are your flesh and bone.”  
(1 Chronicles 11:1 ULB)

This means, “We and you belong to the same race, the same family.”

The kings of the earth take their stand together (Psalm 2:2 ULB)

This means, “The kings on earth plan together.”

the one who lifts up my head” (Psalm 3:3 ULB)

This means, “the one who helps me.”

### Translation Strategies

If the idiom would be clearly understood in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

1. Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.
2. Use a different idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.

- **Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, “Look, we are your flesh and bone.”** (1 Chronicles 11:1 ULB)
  - “...Look, we all belong to the same nation.”
- **he resolutely set his face to go to Jerusalem.** (Luke 9:51 ULB)
  - “He started to travel to Jerusalem, determined to reach it.”
- **I am not worthy that you should enter under my roof.** (Luke 7:6 ULB)
  - “I am not worthy that you should enter my house.”

2. Use an idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

- **Let these words go deeply into your ears** (Luke 9:44 ULB)
  - “Be all ears when I say these words to you.”
- **”My eyes grow dim from grief** (Psalm 6:7ULB)
  - “I am crying my eyes out”

## Irony

*This answers the question: What is irony and how can I translate it?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Figures of Speech*

### Description

Irony is a figure of speech in which a person pretends to say what he really believes, when in fact he is saying what someone else believes, and he does it in a way that shows that other belief is wrong. People do this to emphasize how different something is from what it should be, or how someone else's belief is foolish. It is often humorous.

Jesus answered them, "People who are in good health do not need a physician, only people who are sick need one. I did not come to call righteous people to repentance, but to call sinners to repentance." (Luke 5:31-32 ULB)

When Jesus spoke of "righteous people," he was not referring to people who were truly righteous. He was speaking to people who wrongly believed that they were righteous and who were criticizing him for welcoming sinners. Jesus implied that they were wrong to think that they were better than others and did not need to repent.

### Reason this is a translation issue

- If someone does not realize that a speaker is using irony, he will think that the speaker actually believes what he is saying. He will not realize that the speaker is ridiculing the idea.

### Examples from the Bible

After blindfolding him, they asked him, saying, "*Prophecy! Who is the one who hit you?*" (Luke 22:64ULB)

The fact that the soldiers were beating Jesus shows us that they did not believe that he was a prophet. They knew that other people thought that Jesus was a prophet, and they may have also thought that Jesus himself claimed to be a prophet. When they told him to prophesy, they were using irony. They were mocking him and implying that if he really was a prophet, then he should be able to tell who hit him without seeing them.

"Present your case," says Yahweh; "present your best arguments for your idols," says the King of Jacob. "Let them bring us their own arguments; have them come forward and declare to us what will happen, so we may know these things well. Have them tell us of earlier predictive declarations, so we can reflect on them and know how they were fulfilled." (Isaiah 41:21-22 ULB)



People worshiped idols as if their idols had any knowledge or power, and Yahweh was angry at them for doing that. So he used irony and challenged their idols to tell what would happen in the future. He knew that the idols could not even speak, but he did this to mock the idols and rebuke the people for worshiping them.

Can you lead light and darkness to their places of work?  
 Can you find the way back to their houses for them?  
*Undoubtedly you know, for you were born then;*  
*"the number of your days is so large!"* (Job 38:20, 21 ULB)

Job thought that he was wise. Yahweh used irony to show Job that he was not so wise. The two underlined phrase above emphasize that Job could not possibly answer God's questions about the creation of light because Job was not born until many many years later.

### Translation Strategies

If the irony would be understood correctly in your language, translate it as it is stated. If not, here is another strategy.

1. Translate it in a way that shows that the speaker is saying what someone else believes.
2. Translate the actual, intended meaning of the statement of irony. The actual meaning of the irony is *not* found in the literal words of the speaker, but instead the true meaning is found in the opposite of the literal meaning of the speaker's words.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Translate it in a way that shows that the speaker is saying what someone else believes.

- **After blindfolding him, they asked him, saying, "Prophesy! Who is the one who hit you?"** (Luke 22:64 ULB)
  - "After blindfolding him, they asked him, saying, "You call yourself a prophet. Then prophesy! Who hit you?"
  - "After blindfolding him, they said to him, "Prophesy! If you were really a prophet, you would be able to tell us who hit you."
- **I did not come to call *righteous people* to repentance, but to call sinners to repentance.** (Luke 5:32 ULB)
  - "I did not come to call *people who think that they are righteous* to repentance, but to call sinners to repentance."

2. Translate the actual, intended meaning of the statement of irony.

- **After blindfolding him, they asked him, saying, "Prophesy! Who is the one who hit you?"** (Luke 22:64 ULB)

- “After blindfolding him, they said to him, *”You are not a prophet because you cannot even tell us who struck you!”* ”
- **“Present your case,” says Yahweh; “present your best arguments for your idols,” says the King of Jacob. “Let them bring us their own arguments; have them come forward and declare to us what will happen, so we may know these things well. Have them tell us of earlier predictive declarations, so we can reflect on them and know how they were fulfilled.”** (Isaiah 41:21-22 ULB)
  - ” ‘Present your case,’ says Yahweh; ‘present your best arguments for your idols,’ says the King of Jacob. Your idols *cannot bring us their own arguments or even come forward to declare to us what will happen*. We cannot hear them because *they cannot speak* to tell us their earlier predictive declarations, so we cannot reflect on them and know how they were fulfilled.”

**Can you lead light and darkness to their places of work?**

**Can you find the way back to their houses for them?**

***Undoubtedly you know, for you were born then;  
the number of your days is so large!*** (Job 38:20, 21 ULB)

- ”Can you lead light and darkness to their places of work? Can you find the way back to their houses for them? *You act like you know how light and darkness were created, as if you were there; as if you are as old as creation!*”

*Next we recommend you learn about:*

- *Litotes*

## Merism

*This answers the question: What does the word merism mean and how can I translate phrases that have it?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Figures of Speech*

Merism is a figure of speech in which a person refers to something by speaking of two extreme parts of it.

### Description

Merism is a figure of speech in which a person refers to something by speaking of two extreme parts of it.

“I am the Alpha and the Omega,” says the Lord God, “the one who is, and who was, and who is to come, the Almighty.” (Revelation 1:8, ULB)

I am the Alpha and the Omega, the First and the Last, the Beginning and the End. (Revelation 22:13, ULB)

“Alpha and Omega” is a merism that includes everything from the beginning to the end. It means eternal.

I praise you, Father, Lord of *heaven and earth*, (Matthew 11:25 ULB)

“Heaven and earth” is a merism that includes everything that exists.

### Reason this is a translation issue

Some readers may think that the phrase only applies to the items mentioned. They may not realize that it refers to those two things and everything in between.

### Examples from the Bible

*From the rising of the sun to its setting*, Yahweh’s name should be praised. (Psalm 113:3 ULB)

This underlined phrase is a merism because it speaks of the east and the west and everywhere in between. It means “everywhere.”

He will bless those who honor him, both *young and old*. (Psalm 115:13)

The underlined phrase is merism because it speaks of old people and young people and everyone in between. It means “everyone.”

**Translation Strategies**

If the merism would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

1. Identify what the merism refers to without mentioning the parts.
2. Identify what the merism refers to and include the parts.

**Examples of Translation Strategies Applied**

1. Identify what the merism refers to without mentioning the parts.

- **I praise you, Father, Lord of *heaven and earth*** (Matthew 11:25 ULB)
  - "I praise you, Father, Lord of *everything*"
- ***From the rising of the sun to its setting, Yahweh's name should be praised.*** (Psalm 113:3 ULB)
  - "*In all places*, people should praise Yahweh."

2. Identify what the merism refers to and include the parts.

- **I praise you, Father, Lord of *heaven and earth*** (Matthew 11:25 ULB)
  - "I praise you, Father, Lord of *everything, including both what is in heaven and what is on earth*"
- **He will bless those who honor him, both *young and old*.** (Psalm 115:13 ULB)
  - "He will bless *all those* who honor him, regardless of whether they are *young or old*."

## Metaphor

*This answers the question: What is a metaphor and how can I translate a sentence that has one?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- [Figures of Speech](#)
- [Simile](#)

### Description

A metaphor is the use of words to speak of one thing as if it were a different thing. Sometimes a speaker does this in ways that are very common in the language. At other times, a speaker does this in ways that are less common in the language and that might even be unique.

1. First we will discuss very common metaphors.

The metaphors that are very common in a language are usually not very vivid. They may even be “dead.” Examples in English are “table leg,” “family tree,” and “the price of food is going up.” Examples in biblical languages are “hand” to mean “power,” “face” to mean “presence,” and “clothing” to mean emotions or moral qualities.

Metaphors like these are in constant use in the world’s languages, because they serve as convenient ways to organize thought. In general, languages speak of abstract qualities, such as power, presence, emotions, and moral qualities, as if they were objects that can be seen or held, or as if they were body parts, or as if they were events that you can watch happen.

When these metaphors are used in their normal ways, the speaker and audience do not normally even regard them as figurative language. This is why, for example, it would be wrong to translate the English expression, “The price of petrol is going up” into another language in a way that would draw undeserved attention to it, because English speakers do not view it as a vivid expression, that is, as an unusual expression that carries meaning in an unusual manner.

For a description of important patterns of this kind of metaphor, please see [Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns](#) and the pages it will direct you to.

2. Next we will discuss the less common metaphors, metaphors that are sometimes even unique in a language.

The speaker usually produces metaphors of this kind in order to emphasize the importance of what he is talking about. For example,

For you who fear my name, the sun of righteousness will rise with healing in its wings.  
(Malachi 4:2 ULB)

Here God speaks about his salvation as if it were the sun rising to shine its rays on the people whom he loves. And he speaks of the sun’s rays as if they were wings. Also, he speaks of these wings as if they were bringing medicine that would heal his people.

We call this kind of metaphor “live.” It is unique in the biblical languages, which means that it is very memorable.

## Parts of a Metaphor

When talking about metaphors, it can be helpful to talk about their parts. The thing someone speaks of is called the **topic**. The thing he calls it is the **image**. The way that they are similar is the **point of comparison**.

In the metaphor below, the speaker describes the woman he loves as a rose. The woman (his “love”) is the topic and the red rose is the image. Both are beautiful and delicate.

- My love is a red, red rose.

1. Sometimes the **topic** and the **image** are both stated clearly.

Jesus said to them. *“I am the bread of life. He who comes to me will not hunger, and he who believes on me will never thirst.”* (John 6:35 ULB)

Jesus called himself the bread of life. The topic is “I” and the image is “bread.” Bread is a food that people ate all the time. Just as people need to eat food in order to have physical life, people need to trust in Jesus in order to have spiritual life.

2. Sometimes only the **image** is stated clearly.

Produce *fruits* that are worthy of repentance (Luke 3:8 ULB)

The image here is “fruits”. The topic is not stated, but it is actions or behavior. Trees can produce good fruit or bad fruit, and people can produce good behavior or bad behavior. Fruits that are worthy of repentance are good behavior that is appropriate for people who have repented.

## Purposes of this second kind of metaphor

- One purpose of metaphor is to teach people about something that they do not know (the **topic**) by showing that it is like something that they already know (the **image**).
- Another purpose is to emphasize that something has a particular quality or to show that it has that quality in an extreme way.
- Another purpose is to lead people to feel the same way about one thing as they would feel toward another.

## Reasons this is a translation issue

- People may not realize that a word is being used as an image in a metaphor.
- People may not be familiar with the thing that is used as an image.
- If the topic is not stated, people may not know what the topic is.
- People may not know how the topic and the image are alike.

## Translation Principles

- Make the meaning of a metaphor as clear to the target audience as it was to the original audience.

- Do not make the meaning of a metaphor more clear to the target audience than it was to the original audience.

### Examples from the Bible

And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the *clay*. You are our *potter*; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULB)

The example above has two metaphors. The topics are “we” and “you” and the images are “clay and ”potter.” Just as a potter takes clay and forms a jar or dish out of it, God makes us into what he wants us to be.

Jesus said to them, ”Take heed and beware of *the yeast of the Pharisees and Sadducees.*” The disciples reasoned among themselves and said, “It is because we took no bread.” (Matthew 16:6-7 ULB)

Jesus used a metaphor, but his disciples did not realize it. When he said “yeast,” they thought he was talking about bread, but “yeast” was the image in his metaphor about the teaching of the Pharisees and Sadducees. Since the disciples did not understand what Jesus meant, it would not be good to state clearly here what Jesus meant.

### Translation Strategies

If people would understand the metaphor in the same way that the original readers would have understood it, go ahead and use it. If not, here are some other strategies.

1. If the metaphor is common and seems to be a normal way to say something in the biblical language, express the main idea in the simplest way preferred by your language.
2. If the target audience would think that the phrase should be understood literally, change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as “like” or “as.”
3. If the target audience would not know the **image**, see [Translate Unknowns](#) for ideas on how to translate that image.
4. If the target audience would not use that **image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.
5. Or, if the target audience would not use that **image** for that meaning, simply state the truth that the metaphor was used to communicate.
6. If the target audience would not know what the **topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the topic was.)
7. If the target audience would not know how the topic is like the image, state it clearly.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If the metaphor is common and seems to be a normal way to say something in the biblical language, express the main idea in the simplest way preferred by your language.

- **For after David had in his own generation served the desires of God, *he fell asleep*, was laid with his fathers, and saw decay,** (Acts 13:36 ULB)

- "For after David had in his own generation served the desires of God, *he died*, was laid with his fathers, and saw decay."

2. If the target audience would think that the phrase should be understood literally, change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding "like" or "as."

- **And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the *clay*. You are our *potter*; and we all are the work of your hand.** (Isaiah 64:8 ULB)

- "And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are *like* clay. You are *like* a potter; and we all are the work of your hand."

3. If the target audience would not know the **image**, see [Translate Unknowns](#) for ideas on how to translate that image.

- **Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to *kick a goad*.** (Acts 26:14 ULB)

- "Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to kick against a pointed stick."

4. If the target audience would not use that **image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.

- **And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the *clay*. You are our *potter*; and we all are the work of your hand.** (Isaiah 64:8 ULB)

- "And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the *wood*. You are our *carver*; and we all are the work of your hand."

- "And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the *string*. You are the *weaver*; and we all are the work of your hand."

5. Or, if the target audience would not use that **image** for that meaning, simply state the truth that the metaphor was used to communicate.

- **I will make you become *fishers of men*.** (Mark 1:17 ULB )

- "I will make you become *people who gather men*."

- "Now you gather fish. I will make you *gather people*."

6. If the target audience would not know what the **topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the topic was.)

- **Yahweh lives; may *my rock* be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.** (Psalm 18:46 ULB)

- "Yahweh lives; *He is my rock*. May he be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted."

7. If the target audience would not know how the topic is like the image, state it clearly.



- **Yahweh lives; may *my rock* be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.** (Psalm 18:46 ULB)
  - "Yahweh lives; may he be praised because like a huge rock, *he shields me from my enemies*. May the God of my salvation be exalted."
- **Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you *to kick a goad*.** (Acts 26:14 ULB)
  - "Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? You *fight against me and hurt yourself* like an ox that kicks against its owner's pointed stick."

To learn more about common metaphors read:

- [Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns](#)

## Metonymy

*This answers the question: What is a metonymy?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Figures of Speech*

Many times the Bible uses metonymy. If you do not recognize it as a metonymy you will not understand the passage or worse yet, get the wrong understanding of the passage.

### Description

**Metonymy** is a figure of speech in which a thing or idea is called not by its own name, but by the name of something closely associated with it. A **metonym** is a word or phrase used as a substitute for something it is associated with.

and *the blood* of Jesus his Son cleanses us from all sin. (1 John 1:7 ULB)

The blood represents Christ's death.

He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, "*This cup* is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you. (Luke 22:20 ULB)

The cup represents the wine that is in the cup.

### Metonymy can be used

- as a shorter way of referring to something
- to make an abstract idea more meaningful by referring to it with the name of a concrete object associated with it.

### Reason this is a translation issue

- If a metonym is used, people need to be able to understand what it represents.

### Examples from the Bible

The Lord God will give him *the throne* of his father, David. (Luke 1:32 ULB)

A throne represents the authority of a king. Throne is a metonym for "kingly authority," "kingship" or, "reign." This means that God would make him become the king who was to follow King David.

Immediately his mouth was opened (Luke 1:64 ULB)

The mouth here represents the power to speak. This means that he was able to talk again.

who warned you to flee from *the wrath* that is coming? (Luke 3:7 ULB)

The word “wrath” or “anger” is a metonym for “punishment.” God was extremely angry with the people and, as a result, he would punish them.

### Translation Strategies

If people would easily understand the metonym, consider using it. Otherwise, here is an option.

1. Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.
2. Use the name of the thing the metonym represents.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.

- **He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, “*This cup* is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you.** (Luke 22:20 ULB)
  - “He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, “*The wine in this cup* is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you.”

2. Use the name of the thing the metonym represents.

- **The Lord God will give him *the throne* of his father, David.** (Luke 1:32 ULB)
  - “The Lord God will give him *the kingly authority* of his father, David.”
  - “The Lord God will *make him king* like his ancestor, King David.”
- **who warned you to flee from *the wrath* to come?** (Luke 3:7 ULB)
  - “who warned you to flee from God’s coming *punishment*?”

To learn about some common metonymies, we suggest you read:

- [Biblical Imagery - Common Metonymies](#)

## Parallelism

*This answers the question: What is parallelism?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Figures of Speech*

### Description

In **parallelism** two phrases or clauses that are similar in structure or idea are used together. There are different kinds of parallelism. Some of them are the following:

1. The second clause or phrase means the same as the first.
2. The second clarifies or strengthens the meaning of the first.
3. The second completes what is said in the first.
4. The second says something that contrasts with the first.

Parallelism is most commonly found in Old Testament poetry, such as in the books of Psalms and Proverbs. It also occurs in Greek in the New Testament, both in the four gospels and in the apostles' letters.

### Reason this is a translation issue

Some languages would not use the kind of parallelism in which the two phrases mean the same thing. They would either think it odd that someone said the same thing twice, or they think that the two phrases must have some difference in meaning.

### Examples from the Bible

1. The second clause or phrase means the same as the first.

You make him to rule over the works of your hands;  
you have put all things under his feet (Psalm 8:6 ULB)

Both lines say that God made man the ruler of everything.

2. The second clarifies or strengthens the meaning of the first.

The eyes of Yahweh are everywhere,  
keeping watch over the evil and the good. (Proverbs 15:3 ULB)

The second line tells more specifically what Yahweh watches.

3. The second completes what is said in the first.

I lift up my voice to Yahweh,  
and he answers me from his holy hill. (Psalm 3:4 ULB)

The second line tells what Yahweh does in response to what the person does in the first clause.

4. The second says something that contrasts with the first.

For Yahweh approves of the way of the righteous,  
but the way of the wicked will perish. (Psalm 1:6 ULB)

This contrasts what happens to righteous people with what happens to wicked people.

A gentle answer turns away wrath,  
but a harsh word stirs up anger. (Proverbs 15:1 ULB)

This contrasts what happens when someone gives a gentle answer with what happens when someone says something harsh.

### **Translation Strategies**

1. For most kinds of parallelism, it is good to translate both of the clauses or phrases.
2. When the two clauses or phrases mean the same thing, some languages would not translate them both. (See [Parallelism with the Same Meaning](#))

### **Examples of Translation Strategies Applied**

(See [Parallelism with the Same Meaning](#))

*Next we recommend you learn about:*

- [Parallelism with the Same Meaning](#)

## Personification

*This answers the question: What is personification?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Figures of Speech*

Personification is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of something as if it could do things that animals or people can do. People often speak this way because it makes it easier to talk about things that we cannot see, such as wisdom and sin.

Does not Wisdom call out? (Proverbs 8:1 ULB)

sin crouches at the door (Genesis 4:7 ULB)

Some languages do not use personification, and some languages use it only in certain situations.

### Description

Personification is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of something as if it could do things that animals or people can do. People often do this because it makes it easier to talk about things that we cannot see, such as wisdom, sin, and wind. For example:

Does not Wisdom call out? (Proverbs 8:1 ULB)

sin crouches at the door (Genesis 4:7 ULB)

People also do this because it is sometimes easier to talk about relationships between people and other people than about relationships between people and non-human things, such as wealth.

You cannot serve God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24 ULB)

### Reason this is a translation issue

- Some languages do not use personification.
- Some languages use personification only in certain situations.

### Examples from the Bible

You cannot serve God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24 ULB)

Jesus speaks of wealth as if it were a master whom people might serve. Loving money and basing one's decisions on it is like serving it as a slave would serve his master.

Does not Wisdom call out? Does not Understanding raise her voice? (Proverbs 8:1 ULB)

The author speaks of wisdom and understanding as if they are a woman who calls out to teach people. They are not something hidden, but something obvious that people should pay attention to.

## Translation Strategies

If the personification would not be understood clearly, here are some strategies for dealing with it.

1. Add words or phrases to make it clear.
2. Use the words “like” or “as” to show that the sentences is not to be understood literally.
3. Find a way to translate it without the personification.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Add words or phrases to make it clear.

- **sin crouches at the door** (Genesis 4:7 ULB) - God speaks of sin as a wild animal that is waiting for the chance to attack. This shows how dangerous sin is. An additional phrase can be added to make this danger clear.

- “sin is at your door, waiting to attack you”

2. Use the words “like” or “as” to show that the sentences is not to be understood literally.

- **sin crouches at the door** (Genesis 4:7 ULB) - This can be translated with the word “as.”

- “sin is about to destroy you, just *as* a wild animal could harm a person.”

3. Find a way to translate it without the personification.

- **even the winds and the sea obey him** (Matthew 8:27 ULB) - The men speak of the wind and the sea as if they are able to hear and obey Jesus as people can. This could also be translated without the idea of obedience by speaking of Jesus controlling them.

- “He even controls the winds and the sea.”

**Note:** We have broadened our definition of “personification” to include “zoomorphism” (speaking of other things as if they had animal characteristics) and “anthropomorphism” (speaking of other things as if they had human characteristics).

*Next we recommend you learn about:*

- *Apostrophe*
- *Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns*

## Direct and Indirect Quotations

This answers the question: What are direct and indirect quotations?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Pronouns*
- *Verbs*
- *Quotations and Quote Margins*

There are two kinds of quotations: direct quotation and indirect quotation.

- Direct Quotation: John said, “I do not know at what time I will arrive.”
- Indirect Quotation: John said that he did not know what time he would arrive.

When translating a quotation, translators need to decide whether to translate it as a direct quotation or an indirect quotation.

Watch the video for computer (see <http://youtu.be/oe9Pbk8pFTw>) or tablet/phone (see <http://youtu.be/9ZKDMCWuCiw>).

### Description

In some languages, reported speech can be expressed by direct or indirect quotations.

A **direct quotation** occurs when someone reports what another person said from the viewpoint of that original speaker. People usually expect that this kind of quotation will represent the original speaker’s exact words. In the example below, John would have said “I” when referring to himself, so the narrator, who is telling about John John saying this, uses the word in the quotation “I” to refer to John.

- John said, “*I* do not know at what time *I* will arrive.”

An **indirect quotation** occurs when a speaker reports what someone else said, but in this case, the speaker is reporting it from his own point of view instead of from the original person’s point of view. This kind of quotation usually features changes in pronouns, and it often features changes in time, in word choices, and in length. In the example below, the narrator refers to John as “he” in the quotation and uses the word “would,” which is the past tense of “will.”

- John said that *he* did not know what time *he* would arrive.

### Examples from the Bible

The verses in the examples below have both direct and indirect quotations. In the explanation below the verse, we have underlined the quotations.

He instructed him to tell no one, but told him, “Go on your way, and show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.” (Luke 5:14 ULB)



- Indirect quote: He instructed him *to tell no one*,
- Direct quote: but told him, *"Go on your way, and show yourself to the priest..."*

Being asked by the Pharisees when the kingdom of God would come, Jesus answered them and said, "The kingdom of God is not something that can be observed. Neither will they say, 'Look here!' or, 'Look there!' because the kingdom of God is among you."  
(Luke 17:20-21 ULB)

- Indirect quote: Being asked by the Pharisees *when the kingdom of God would come*,
- Direct quote: Jesus answered them and said, *"The kingdom of God is not something that can be observed. Neither will they say, 'Look here!' or, 'Look there!' because the kingdom of God is among you."*
- Direct quotes: Neither will they say, *'Look here!'* or, *'Look there!'*

### Translation Strategies

If the kind of quote used in the source text would work well in your language, consider using it.

1. If a direct quote would not work well in your language, change it to an indirect quote.
2. If an indirect quote would not work well in your language, change it to a direct quote.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1) If a direct quote would not work well in your language, change it to an indirect quote.

- **He instructed him to tell no one, but told him, "Go on your way, and show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them."** (Luke 5:14 ULB)
  - He instructed him to tell no one, but *to go on his way, and show himself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for his cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.*

2) If an indirect quote would not work well in your language, change it to a direct quote.

- **He instructed him *to tell no one*, but told him, "Go on your way, and show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them."** (Luke 5:14 ULB)
  - He told him *"Tell no one. But go on your way, and show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them."*

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Quotes within Quotes*

## Reflexive Pronouns

*This answers the question: What are reflexive pronouns?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Pronouns*
- *Sentences*

All languages have ways of showing that the same person fills two different roles in a sentence. This page will help you understand how English shows this and will help you to see how your language handles this.

### Description

**Reflexive pronouns** are pronouns that refer to someone or something that has already been mentioned in a sentence. In English the reflexive pronouns are: myself, yourself, himself, herself, itself, ourselves, yourselves, and themselves.

### Reason this is a translation issue

- Languages have different ways of referring to someone or something more than once in a sentence.
- The reflexive pronouns in English have other functions.

### Uses of Reflexive Pronouns

- to show that the same person or things fills two different roles in a sentence
- to emphasize a person or thing in the sentence
- to show that someone did something alone
- to show that someone or something was alone

### Examples from the Bible

1. Reflexive pronouns used to that show that the same person or things fills two different roles in a sentence

If *I* should testify about *myself* alone, my testimony would not be true. (John 5:31 ULB)

Now the Passover of the Jews was near, and *many* went up to Jerusalem out of the country before the Passover in order to purify *themselves*. (John 11:55 ULB)

2. Reflexive pronouns used to emphasize a person or thing in the sentence

*Jesus himself* was not baptizing, but his disciples were (John 4:2 ULB)

So they left the crowd, taking *Jesus* with them, since he was already in the boat. Other boats were also with him. And a violent windstorm arose and the waves were breaking into the boat so that the boat was already full. But *Jesus himself* was in the stern, asleep on a cushion. (Mark 4:36-38 ULB)

### 3. Reflexive pronouns used to show that someone did something alone

When Jesus realized that they were about to come and seize him by force to make him king, he withdrew again up the mountain *by himself*. (John 6:15 ULB)

### 4. Reflexive pronouns used to show that someone or something was alone

He saw the linen cloths lying there and the cloth that had been on his head. *It* was not lying with the linen cloths but was rolled up in its place *by itself*. (John 20:6-7 ULB)

## Translation Strategies

If a reflexive pronoun would have the same function in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other strategies.

1. In some languages people put something on the verb to show that the object of the verb is the same as the subject.
2. In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by referring to it in a special place in the sentence.
3. In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by adding something to that word or putting another word with it.
4. In some languages people show that someone did something alone by using a word like “alone.”
5. In some languages people show that something was alone by using a phrase that tells about where it was.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. In some languages people put something on the verb to show that the object of the verb is the same as the subject.

- **If I should testify about *myself* alone, my testimony would not be true.** (John 5:31)
  - “If I should *self-testify* alone, my testimony would not be true.”
- **Now the Passover of the Jews was near, and many went up to Jerusalem out of the country before the Passover in order to *purify themselves*.** (John 11:55)
  - “Now the Passover of the Jews was near, and many went up to Jerusalem out of the country before the Passover in order to *self-purify*.”

2. In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by referring to it in a special place in the sentence.

- **He himself took our sickness and bore our diseases.** (Matthew 8:17 ULB)

- "It was *he who* took our sickness and bore our diseases."

- **Jesus himself was not baptizing, but his disciples were.** (John 4:2)

- "It was *not Jesus who* was baptizing, but his disciples were."

3. In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by adding something to that word or putting another word with it. English adds the reflexive pronoun.

- **Now Jesus said this to test Philip, for he himself knew what he was going to do.** (John 6:6)

4. In some languages people show that someone did something alone by using a word like "alone."

- **When Jesus realized that they were about to come and seize him by force to make him king, he withdrew again up the mountain by himself.** (John 6:15)

- "When Jesus realized that they were about to come and seize him by force to make him king, he withdrew again *alone* up the mountain."

5. In some languages people show that something was alone by using a phrase that tells about where it was.

- **He saw the linen cloths lying there and the cloth that had been on his head. It was not lying with the linen cloths but was rolled up in its place by itself.** (John 20:6-7 ULB)

- "He saw the linen cloths lying there and the cloth that had been on his head. It was not lying with the linen cloths but was rolled up and lying *in a different place*."

## Rhetorical Question

*This answers the question: What are rhetorical questions and how can I translate them?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Figures of Speech*
- *Sentences*

A rhetorical question is a question to which the speaker does not expect an answer because he is not looking for information. Speakers use rhetorical questions to express deep emotion or to encourage hearers to think deeply about something. The Bible contains many rhetorical questions, often to express sarcasm or to rebuke or scold the hearer. Speakers of some languages use rhetorical questions for other reasons as well.

### Description

A rhetorical question is a question to which the speaker does not expect an answer because he is not looking for information. Speakers often use rhetorical questions to rebuke or scold people.

Those who stood by said, *Is this how you insult God's high priest?*" (Acts 23:4 ULB) The people did not ask this question in order to get information. Rather they used it to scold Paul because they did not think he should have spoken as he did to the high priest.

The Bible contains many rhetorical questions. Some of the purposes of these rhetorical questions are to remind people of something that they already know, to express strong emotion, to say something in a strong way, or to introduce something they want to talk about.

### Reasons this is a translation issue

- Some readers may think that a question is a request for information.
- Some languages use rhetorical questions only for scolding.
- Some readers might think that the purpose of a question is something other than what it really is.

### Examples from the Bible

Do you not still rule the kingdom of Israel? (1 Kings 21:7 ULB)

Jezebel used the question above to remind King Ahab of something he already knew: he still ruled the kingdom of Israel. She did this in order to rebuke him for being unwilling to take over a poor man's property. She was implying that since he was the king of Israel he should feel free to take the man's property.

*Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number!* (Jeremiah 2:32 ULB)

God used the question above to remind his people of something they already knew: a woman would never forget her jewelry and veils. He then rebuked his people for forgetting him, who is so much greater than those things.

Why did I not die when I came out from the womb? (Job 3:11 ULB)

Job used the question above to show how sad he was that he did not die as soon as he was born. He wished that he had not lived.

And why has it happened to me that the mother of my Lord should come to me? (Luke 1:43 ULB)

Elizabeth used the question above to show how surprised and happy she was that the mother of her Lord came to her.

Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULB)

Jesus used the question above to remind the people of something they already knew: a good father would never give his son something bad to eat.

Therefore, if you who are evil know how to give good gifts to your children, how much more will your Father from heaven give good things to those who ask him? (Matthew 7:11 ULB)

Jesus used this question to teach the people in an emphatic way that God gives good things to those who ask him.

What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to? It is like a mustard seed which a man took and threw into his garden... (Luke 13:18-19 ULB)

Jesus used the question above to introduce what he was going to talk about. He was going to compare the kingdom of God to something.

### **Translation Strategies**

Be sure you know that you are dealing with a rhetorical question and not an information question. Then be sure you know what the purpose of the rhetorical question is. Is it to encourage or rebuke or shame the hearer? Is it to bring up a new topic? Is it to do something else?

If using the rhetorical question would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider doing so. If not, here are other options:

1. Add the answer after the question.
2. Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.
3. Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.

**Examples of Translation Strategies Applied**

1. Add the answer after the question.

- **Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number!** (Jeremiah 2:32 ULB)
  - *Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Of course not! Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number!*
- **Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone?** (Matthew 7:9 ULB)
  - *”Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? None of you would do that!”*

2. Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.

- **What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to? It is like a mustard seed...** (Luke 13:18-19 ULB)
  - *“This is what the kingdom of God is like. It is like a mustard seed...”*
- **Is this how you insult God’s high priest?** (Acts 23:4 ULB)
  - *You should not insult God’s high priest!”*
- **Why did I not die when I came out from the womb?** (Job 3:11 ULB)
  - *I wish I had died when I came out from the womb!”*
- **And why has it happened to me that the mother of my Lord should come to me?** (Luke 1:43 ULB)
  - *“How wonderful it is that the mother of my Lord has come to me!”*

3. Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.

- **Do you not still rule the kingdom of Israel?** (1 Kings 21:7 ULB)
  - *”You still rule the kingdom of Israel, don’t you?”*

## Simile

*This answers the question: What is a simile?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Figures of Speech*

A simile is a comparison of two things that are not normally thought to be similar. One is said to be “like” the other. It focuses on a particular trait the two items have in common, and it includes the words “like,” “as” or “than.”

### Description

A simile is a comparison of two things that are not normally thought to be similar. It focuses on a particular trait the two items have in common, and it includes the words “like,” “as” or “than.”

When he saw the crowds, he had compassion for them, because they were worried and confused, because they were like sheep without a shepherd. (Matthew 9:36 ULB)

Jesus compared the crowds of people to sheep without a shepherd. Sheep grow frightened when they do not have a good shepherd to lead them in safe places. The crowds were like that because they did not have good religious leaders.

See, I send you out *as sheep in the midst of wolves*, so be as wise *as serpents* and harmless *as doves*. (Matthew 10:16 ULB)

Jesus compared his disciples to sheep and their enemies to wolves. Wolves attack sheep. Jesus’ enemies would attack his disciples.

For the word of God is living and active and sharper *than any two-edged sword*. (Hebrews 4:12 ULB)

God’s word is compared to a two-edged sword. A two-edged sword is a weapon that can easily cut through a person’s flesh. God’s word is very effective in showing what is in a person’s heart and thoughts.

### Purposes of Simile

- A simile can teach about something that is unknown by showing how it is similar to something that is known.
- A simile can emphasize a particular trait, sometimes in a way that gets people’s attention.
- Similes help form a picture in the mind or help the reader experience what he is reading about more fully.

### Reasons this is a translation issue

- People may not know how the two items are similar.
- People may not be familiar with the item that something is compared to.



## Examples from the Bible

Suffer hardship with me, *as a good soldier of Christ Jesus*. (2 Timothy 2:3 ULB)

In this simile, Paul compares suffering with what soldiers endure, and he encourages Timothy to follow their example.

*for as the lightning appears when it flashes from one part of the sky to another part of the sky, so will the Son of Man be in his day.* (Luke 17:24 ULB)

This verse does not tell how the Son of Man will be like the lightning. But from the context we can understand from the verses before it that just as lightning flashes suddenly and everyone can see it, the Son of Man will come suddenly and everyone will be able to see him. No one will have to be told about it.

## Translation Strategies

If people would understand the correct meaning of a simile, consider using it. If they would not, here are some strategies you can use:

1. If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.
2. If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible.
3. Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1 If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.

- **See, I send you out *as sheep in the midst of wolves***, (Matthew 10:16 ULB) - This compares the danger that Jesus' disciples would be in with the danger that sheep are in when they are surrounded by wolves.
  - "See, I send you out among wicked people and you will be in danger from them as sheep are in danger when they are among wolves."
- **For the word of God is living and active and sharper *than any two-edged sword***. (Hebrews 4:12 ULB)
  - "For the word of God is living and active and *more powerful than a very sharp two-edged sword*"

2. If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible.

- **See, I send you out *as sheep in the midst of wolves***, (Matthew 10:16 ULB) - If people do not know what sheep and wolves are, or that wolves kill and eat sheep, you could use some other animal that kills another.
  - "See, I send you out *as chickens in the midst of wild dogs*,"
- **How often did I long to gather your children together, just as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings, but you did not agree!** (Matthew 23:37 ULB)
  - How often I wanted to gather your children together, as a mother closely watches over her infants, but you refused!
- **If you have faith even as small as a grain of mustard**, (Matthew 17:20 ULB)
  - "If you have faith even as small as a tiny seed"

3. Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

- **See, I send you out *as sheep in the midst of wolves***, (Matthew 10:16 ULB)
  - "See, I send you out and people will want to harm you."
- **How often did I long to gather your children together, just as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings, but you did not agree!** (Matthew 23:37 ULB)
  - "How often I wanted to protect you, but you refused!"

*Next we recommend you learn about:*

- *Metaphor*
- *Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns*

## Synecdoche

*This answers the question: What does the word synecdoche mean?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Figures of Speech*

Synecdoche is when a speaker uses a part of something to refer to the whole or uses the whole to refer to a part.

### Description

Synecdoche is when a speaker uses a part of something to refer to the whole or uses the whole to refer to a part.

*My soul* exalts the Lord. (Luke 1:46 ULB)

Mary was very happy about what the Lord was doing, so she said “my soul”, the part of herself that has emotions, to refer to her whole self.

*the Pharisees* said to him, “Look, why are they doing something that is not lawful ...?”  
(Mark 2:24 ULB)

The Pharisees who were standing there did not all say the same words at the same time. Instead, it is more likely that one man representing the group said those words.

### Reasons this is a translation issue

- Some readers may understand the words literally.
- Some readers may realize that they are not to understand the words literally, but they may not know what the meaning is.

### Example from the Bible

I looked on all the deeds that *my hands* had accomplished (Ecclesiastes 2:11 ULB)

“My hands” is a synecdoche for the whole person, because clearly the legs and the rest of the body and the mind were also involved.

### Translation Strategies

If the synecdoche would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

**Examples of Translation Strategies Applied**

1. State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

- **My soul exalts the Lord.** (Luke 1:46 ULB)
  - "I exalt the Lord."
- **the Pharisees said to him** (Mark 2:24 ULB)
  - "a representative of the Pharisees said to him"
- **I looked on all the deeds that my hands had accomplished** (Ecclesiastes 2:11 ULB)
  - "I looked on all the deeds that I had accomplished"

*Next we recommend you learn about:*

- *Metonymy*
- *Biblical Imagery - Common Metonymies*

## How to Translate Names

*This answers the question: How can I translate names that are new to my culture?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Translate Unknowns*

The Bible has names of many people, groups of people, and places. Some of these names may sound strange and be hard to say. Sometimes readers may not know what a name refers to, and sometimes they may need to understand what a name means. This page will help you see how you can translate these names and how you can help people understand what they need to know about them.

### Description

The Bible has names of many people, groups of people, and places. All names in the Bible have meaning. Most of the time, names in the Bible are used simply to identify the people and places they refer to. But sometimes the meaning of a name is especially important.

It was this *Melchizedek*, king of Salem, priest of God Most High, who met Abraham returning from the slaughter of the kings and blessed him. (Hebrews 7:1ULB)

Here the writer uses the name “Melchizedek” simply to refer to a man who had that name, and the title “king of Salem” simply to tell us something about Melchizedek.

His name “Melchizedek” means “king of righteousness,” and also “king of Salem,” that is, “king of peace. (Hebrews 7:2 ULB)

Here the writer explains the meanings of Melchizedek’s name and title.

### Reasons this is a translation issue

- Readers may not know some of the names in the Bible. They may not know whether a name refers to a person or place or something else.
- Readers may need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand the passage.
- Some names may have different sounds or combinations of sounds that are not used in your language or are unpleasant to say in your language.
- Some people and places in the Bible have two names. Readers may not realize that two names refer to the same person or place.

### Examples from the Bible

You went over the *Jordan* and came to *Jericho*. The leaders of Jericho fought against you, along with the *Amorites* (Joshua 24:11 ULB)

Readers might not know that “Jordan” is the name of a river, “Jericho” is the name of a city, and “Amorites” is the name of a group of people.

she said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore the well was called *Beerlahairoi*; (Genesis 16:13-14 ULB)

Readers may not understand the second sentence if they do not know that “Beerlahairoi” means “Well of the the Living One who sees me.”

She named him *Moses* and said, “Because I drew him from the water.” (Exodus 2:11 ULB)

Readers may not understand why she said this if they do not know that the name *Moses* sounds like the Hebrew words “pull out.”

*Saul* was in agreement with his death (Acts 8:1 ULB)

It came about in Iconium that *Paul* and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue (Acts 14:1 ULB)

Readers may not know that the names *Saul* and *Paul* refer to the same person.

### Translation Strategies

1. If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.
2. If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.
3. Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name.
4. If a person or place has two different names, use one name all of the time and write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently.
5. Or use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that explains who or what the name refers to.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.

- **You went over the *Jordan* and came to *Jericho*. The leaders of *Jericho* fought against you, along with the *Amorites*** (Joshua 24:11 ULB)
  - “You went over the *Jordan River* and came to the city of *Jericho*. The leaders of *Jericho* fought against you, along with *the tribe of the Amorites*”
- **Shortly after, some Pharisees came and said to him, “Go and leave here because *Herod* wants to kill you.”** (Luke 13:31 ULB)

- “Shortly after, some Pharisees came and said to him, “Go and leave here because *King Herod* wants to kill you.”

2. If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.

- **She named him *Moses* and said, “Because I drew him from the water.”** (Exodus 2:11 ULB)
  - “She named him *Moses*, which sounds like ‘drawn out,’ and said, “Because I drew him from the water.”

3. Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name.

- **she said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore the well was called *Beerlahairoi*;** (Genesis 16:13-14 ULB)
  - “she said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore the well was called *Well of the One who sees me*;

4. If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text talks about that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently.

For example, Paul is called “Saul” before Acts 13 and “Paul” after Acts 13. You could translate his name as “Paul” all of the time, except in Acts 13:9 where it talks about him having both names.

- **a young man named *Saul*** (Acts 7:58 ULB)
  - “a young man named *Paul*”<sup>1</sup> The footnote would look like:
    - ◇ <sup>[1]</sup>Most versions say Saul here, but most of the time in the Bible he is called Paul.

- **But *Saul*, who is also called *Paul*, was filled with the Holy Spirit;** (Acts 13:9 ULB)
  - “But *Saul*, who is also called *Paul*, was filled with the Holy Spirit;”

5. Or if a person or place has two names, use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that explains who or what the name refers to.

For example, you could write “Saul” where the source text has “Saul” and “Paul” where the source text has “Paul.”

- **a young man named *Saul*** (Acts 7:58 ULB)
  - “a young man named *Saul*”
- **But *Saul*, who is also called *Paul*, was filled with the Holy Spirit;** (Acts 13:9 ULB) \*  
 “But \_\_Saul\_\_, who is also called \_\_Paul\_\_, was filled with the Holy Spirit;” \* \*\*It came about in Iconium that \_\_Paul\_\_ and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue\*\*  
 ([[en:bible:notes:act:14:01 | Acts 14:1 ULB)

- "It came about in Iconium that *Paul*<sup>1</sup> and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue"  
(Acts 14:1 ULB) The footnote would look like:
  - ◇ <sup>[1]</sup>This is the man that was called Saul before Acts 13.

*Next we recommend you learn about:*

- *Copy or Borrow Words*



## Numbers

*This answers the question: How do I translate numbers?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Translate Unknowns*

There are many numbers in the Bible. They can be written as words, such as “five” or as numerals, such as “5”. Some numbers are very large, such as “two hundred” (200), “twenty-two thousand” (22,000) or “one hundred million” (100,000,000.) Some languages do not have words for all of these numbers. Translators need to decide how to translate numbers and whether to write them as words or numerals.

### Description

There are many numbers in the Bible. Some are small, such as “five” (5) and “fifteen” (15). Others are very large, such as “two hundred” (200), twenty-two thousand (22,000) or “one hundred million” (100,000,000). Some numbers are exact and others are rounded.

Abram was *eighty-six* years old when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram. (Genesis 16:16 ULB)

Eighty-six (86) is an exact number.

That day about *three thousand* men out of the people died. (Exodus 32:28 ULB)

Here the number three thousand is a round number. It may have been a little more than that or a little less than that. The word “about” shows that it is not an exact number.

**Reason this is a translation issue:** Some languages do not have words for some of these numbers.

### Translation Principles

- Exact numbers should be translated as closely and specifically as they can be.
- Rounded numbers can be translated more generally.

### Examples from the Bible

When Jared had lived *162* years, he became the father of Enoch. After he became the father of Enoch, Jared lived *eight hundred* years. He became the father of more sons and daughters. Jared lived *962* years, and then he died. (Genesis 5:18-20 ULB)

The numbers 162, eight hundred, and 962 are exact numbers and should be translated with something as close to those numbers as possible.

Our sister, may you be the mother of *thousands of ten thousands*. (Genesis 24:60 ULB)

This is a rounded number. It does not say exactly how many descendants she should have, but it was a huge number of them.

### Translation Strategies

1. Write numbers using numerals.
2. Write numbers using your language's words or the gateway language words for those numbers.
3. Write numbers using words, and put the numerals in parenthesis after them.
4. Combine words for large numbers.
5. Use a very general expression for very large rounded numbers and write the numeral in parentheses afterward.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- **Now, see, at great effort I have prepared for Yahweh's house 100,000 talents of gold, one million talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.** (1 Chronicles 22:14 ULB)

1. Write numbers using numerals.

- "I have prepared for Yahweh's house 100,000 talents of gold, one 1,000,000 talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities."

2. Write numbers using your language's words or the gateway language words for those numbers.

- "I have prepared for Yahweh's house *one hundred thousand* talents of gold, *one million* talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities. "

3. Write numbers using words, and put the numerals in parenthesis after them.

- "I have prepared for Yahweh's house *one hundred thousand (100,000)* talents of gold, *one million (1,000,000)* talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

4. Combine words for large numbers.

- "I have prepared for Yahweh's house *one hundred thousand* talents of gold, *a thousand thousand* talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

5. Use a very general expression for very large rounded numbers and write the numeral in parentheses afterward.

- "I have prepared for Yahweh's house *a great amount of gold (100,000 talents), ten times that amount of silver (1,000,000 talents)*, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

**Consistency**

Be consistent in your translations. Decide how the numbers will be translated, using numbers or numerals. There are different ways of being consistent.

- Use words to represent numbers all of the time. (You might have very long words.)
- Use numerals to represent numbers all of the time.
- Use words to represent the numbers that your language has words for and use numerals for the numbers that your language does not have words for.
- Use words for low numbers and numerals for high numbers.
- Use words for numbers that require few words and numerals for numbers that require more than a few words.
- Use words to represent numbers, and write the numerals in parentheses after them.

**Consistency in the ULB and UDB**

The ULB (Unlocked Literal Bible) and the UDB (Unlocked Dynamic Bible) use words for numbers that have only one or two words (nine, sixteen, three hundred). They use numerals for numbers that have more than two words (the numerals “130” instead of “one hundred thirty”).

When Adam had lived *130* years, he became the father of a son in his own likeness, after his image, and he called his name Seth. After Adam became the father of Seth, he lived *eight hundred* years. He became the father of more sons and daughters. Adam lived *930* years, and then he died. (Genesis 5:3-5 ULB)

*Next we recommend you learn about:*

- *Ordinal Numbers*
- *Fractions*

## Translate Unknowns

*This answers the question: How can I translate ideas that my readers are not familiar with?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Sentences*

How do I translate words like lion, fig tree, mountain, priest, or temple when people in my culture have never seen these things and we do not have a word for them?

### Description

Unknowns are things that occur in the source text that are not known to the people of your culture. The translationWords pages and the translationNotes will help you understand what they are. After you understand them, you will need to find ways to refer to those things so that people who read your translation will understand what they are.

We have here only five loaves of *bread* and two fish (Matthew 14:17 ULB)

Bread is a particular food made by mixing finely crushed grains with oil, and then cooking the mixture so that it is dry. (Grains are the seeds of a kind of grass.) In some cultures people do not have bread or know what it is.

### Reason this is a translation issue

- Readers may not know some of the things that are in the Bible because those things are not part of their own culture.
- Readers may have difficulty understanding a text if they do not know some of the things that are mentioned in it.

### Translation Principles

- Use words that are already part of your language if possible.
- Keep expressions short if possible.
- Represent God's commands and historical facts accurately.

### Examples from the Bible

I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for *jackals* (Jeremiah 9:11 ULB)

Jackals are wild animals like dogs that live in only a few parts of the world. So they are not known in many places.

Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep's clothing, but are truly ravenous *wolves*. (Matthew 7:15 ULB)

If wolves do not live where the translation will be read, the readers may not understand that they are fierce, wild animals like dogs that attack and eat sheep.

Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with *myrrh*. But he refused to drink it. (Mark 15:23 ULB)

People may not know what *myrrh* is and that it was used as a medicine.

to him who made *great lights* (Psalm 136:7ULB)

Some languages have terms for things that give light, like the sun and fire, but they have no general term for lights.

your sins ... will be white like *snow* (Isaiah 1:18 ULB)

People in many parts of the world have not seen snow, but they may have seen it in pictures.

## Translation Strategies

Here are ways you might translate a term that is not known in your language:

1. Use a phrase that describes the part of the meaning that is important in the particular verse being translated.
2. Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.
3. Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.
4. Use a word that is more general in meaning.
5. Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use a phrase that describes the part of the meaning that is important in the particular verse being translated.

- **Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep's clothing, but are truly *ravenous wolves*.** (Matthew 7:15 ULB)
  - "Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep's clothing, but *are truly hungry and dangerous animals*."
- **We have here only five *loaves of bread* and two fish** (Matthew 14:17 ULB)
  - "We have here only five *loaves of baked grain seeds* and two fish"

2. Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.

- **your sins ... will be white like snow** (Isaiah 1:18 ULB) This verse is not about snow. It uses snow in a figure of speech to help people understand how white something will be.
  - "your sins ... will be white like *milk*"
  - "your sins ... will be white like *the moon*"

3. Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.

- **Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with myrrh. But he refused to drink it.** (Mark 15:23 ULB) - People may understand better what myrrh is if it is used with the general word "medicine."
  - "Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with *a medicine called myrrh*. But he refused to drink it."
- **We have here only five loaves of bread and two fish** (Matthew 14:17 ULB) - People may understand better what bread is if it is used with a phrase that tells what it is made of (seeds) and how it is prepared (crushed and baked).
  - "We have here only five loaves of *baked crushed seed bread* and two fish"

4. Use a word that is more general in meaning.

- **I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for jackals** (Jeremiah 9:11 ULB)
  - "I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for *wild dogs*"
- **We have here only five loaves of bread and two fish** (Matthew 14:17 ULB)
  - "We have here only five *loaves of baked food* and two fish"

5. Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

- **to him who made great lights** (Psalm 136:7 ULB)
  - "to him who made *the sun and the moon*"

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Copy or Borrow Words*
- *How to Translate Names*